# FTTH HANDBOOK

# EDITION 8 D&O COMMITTEE REVISION DATE: 13/02/2018



CONNECTING EVERYONE AND EVERYTHING, EVERYWHERE

# Disclaimer

The information in this document is provided as a basis for discussion.

This information does not necessarily represent the official position of the FTTH Council Europe. Some of the content may reflect the position of members of the FTTH Council Europe and/or our partners.

Reference to any products, services or technology does not constitute or imply its endorsement, sponsorship or recommendation by the FTTH Council Europe.

The information is provided on a professional best effort basis. The FTTH Council Europe makes no guarantee of fitness for a particular purpose. No liability is accepted by the FTTH Council Europe for any consequential loss or damage whatsoever, however caused.

All trademarks are acknowledged by the FTTH Council Europe as being the property of their respective owners.

For further information, feedback and input please contact the secretary of the FTTH Council Europe, at info@ftthcouncil.eu

© FTTH Council Europe 2018

Wettelijk Depot: D/2018/12.345/1

This document is licensed under a Creative Commons License 3.0 Attribution, Non-commercial, No



Derivatives. Under the terms of this license you are free to copy and share this document, but you should not alter, transform or build upon it, or use it for commercial purposes.

Third and fourth editions edited by **Pauline Rigby**, freelance editor. Fifth to eight editions revised and edited by **Eileen Connolly Bull**, Connolly Communication AB



# Acknowledgements

The FTTH Handbook has been produced by the FTTH Council Europe and draws heavily on the expertise of its member companies.

We thank the following individuals for their time, effort and contributions, and acknowledge their original material and graphics, which have been included in this guide.

#### First to Seventh editions

These editions were a joint work of all members of the Deployment & Operations Committee of the FTTH Council Europe.

#### **Eight edition**

Rong Zhao, Detecon (Chair of the Deployment & Operations Committee); Curt Badstieber, Langmatz; Maia Bernaerts, Setics; Fridtjof Erbs, ADTRAN; Vincent Garnier, CommScope; Vitor Goncalves, Plumettaz; Mike Harrop, EXFO; Mike Knott, Corning; Jerome Laferriere, Viavi; Thomas Martin, Calix; Raf Meersman, Comsof; José Salgado, Altice Labs; Dieter Verdegem, CommScope; Jonas Verstuyft, Comsof; Jiri Vyslouzil, Dura-Line; Jasper van 't Westende, Vermeer;

The FTTH Handbook is an initiative of the Deployment & Operations Committee of the FTTH Council Europe. The project was coordinated by José Salgado and Michaela Fischer, FTTH Council Europe.



# Foreword

The mission of the FTTH Council Europe is to drive the rollout of fibre access networks to every home, businesses and antenna. While this is achieved in a variety of ways, education, and in particular the education provided through our best- practice publications, form a key part of our work in accelerating the deployment and adoption of this foundational technology that will permit Europe to become a true Gigabit-society.

While the environment for operators, investors and utilities is more challenging than ever, we believe that investments in fibre access networks represent the path to stronger service differentiation and improves the competitive advantage of those offering fibre based services.

Ensuring that the best technology choices are made is an essential ingredient in providing safe investment returns. Our Guides are intended as a forum where experiences and approaches can be shared throughout the world to support those whose aim is to drive real fibre networks across Europe.

The FTTH Handbook was first published in 2007 and since then has covered every aspect of the network: from central office through to subscriber equipment; from passive to active equipment choices. This seventh edition provides up-to-date knowledge about fibre technology and includes the latest innovations, trends and solutions to build highly efficient and future proof automated fibre networks.

This Handbook is a resource for the pro-fibre community. We welcome feedback and suggestions on how we can further improve its content. Extensive additional resources, case studies, reports and opinion pieces are all available on our website.

The FTTH Council Europe represents fibre, cable, equipment and installation companies, operators and investors throughout Europe and it is the experiences from its 150+ members that ensures this Handbook delivers vendor-neutral information based on best-practice and real-world lessons from the industry.

I would like to extend our gratitude to all those who have contributed to the creation and evolution of this Handbook, and to the Deployment and Operations Committee that has compiled and written this comprehensive and useful document.



Moron killy

Ronan Kelly, President of the FTTH Council Europe



# Contents

| 1 | Intr  | Introduction   |   |                            |  |
|---|---|--|---|----------------------------|--|
| 2 | FTTH Network Description  |  |   | 10                         |  |
|   | 2.1   | The  | FTTH network environment  | 10                         |  |
|   | 2.2   | FTT  | x Networks Architecture   | 12                         |  |
|   | 2.3   | FTT  | H Topology and Technology   | 13                         |  |
|   | 2.4   | Net  | vork layers   | 14                         |  |
|   | 2.5   | Ope  | n Access Networks   | 15                         |  |
| 3 | Net   | work   | Planning and Design   | 17                         |  |
|   | 3.1   | Stra   | tegic network planning  | 17                         |  |
|   | 3.2   | High   | I-level network design  |                            |  |
|   | 3.2.1   |  | Where will the POPs be located?   | 23                         |  |
|   | 3.2   | .2   | Where to install the fibre concentration points?  | 23                         |  |
|   | 3.2   | .3   | Which cable routes serve which distribution and feeder areas?   | 23                         |  |
|   | 3.2   | .4   | What is the expected bill of materials?   | 24                         |  |
|   | 3.3   | Deta   | illed network design  | 24                         |  |
|   | 3.3.  | .1   | Detailed Data   | 25                         |  |
|   | 3.3   | .2   | Surveys   | 25                         |  |
|   | 3.3   | .3   | Generating the 'to-build' plans   | 27                         |  |
|   | 3.3   | .4   | Job Management  |                            |  |
|   | 3.4   | Geo  | graphic data  | 28                         |  |
|   | 3.5   | Soft   | ware tools  | 30                         |  |
| 4 | Act   | ive E  | quipment  | 35                         |  |
|   | 4.1   | Dac  | sive optical network  | 05                         |  |
|   |   | r as   |   |                            |  |
|   | 4.1   |  | PON solutions   |                            |  |
|   |   | .1   | •   | 36                         |  |
|   | 4.1   | .1<br>.2   | PON solutions   | 36<br>40                   |  |
|   | 4.1.<br>4.1.  | .1<br>.2<br>.3   | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment   | 36<br>40<br>41             |  |
|   | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.  | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4   | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment<br>FTTdp – Ultra Broadband  | 36<br>40<br>41<br>44       |  |
|   | 4.1<br>4.1<br>4.1<br>4.1  | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5   | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment<br>FTTdp – Ultra Broadband<br>Bandwidth management  | 36<br>40<br>41<br>44<br>45 |  |
|   | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.  | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>PON  | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment<br>FTTdp – Ultra Broadband<br>Bandwidth management<br>Wavelength management<br>I deployment optimization  | 36<br>40<br>41<br>44<br>45 |  |
|   | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2   | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>PON<br>Ethe  | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment<br>FTTdp – Ultra Broadband<br>Bandwidth management<br>Wavelength management   |                            |  |
|   | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2.<br>4.3   | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>Ethe<br>.1   | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment<br>FTTdp – Ultra Broadband<br>Bandwidth management<br>Wavelength management<br>I deployment optimization<br>ernet point-to-point  |                            |  |
|   | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2.<br>4.3.<br>4.3.  | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>Ethe<br>.1<br>.2   | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment<br>FTTdp – Ultra Broadband<br>Bandwidth management<br>Wavelength management<br>I deployment optimization<br>rnet point-to-point<br>Ethernet point-to-point solutions  |                            |  |
|   | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2<br>4.3<br>4.3.<br>4.3.  | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>PON<br>Ethe<br>.1<br>.2<br>.3  | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment<br>FTTdp – Ultra Broadband<br>Bandwidth management<br>Wavelength management<br>deployment optimization<br>rnet point-to-point<br>Ethernet point-to-point solutions<br>Transmission technologies<br>RF-based video solutions   |                            |  |
|   | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2<br>4.3<br>4.3.<br>4.3.<br>4.3.<br>4.3.  | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>PON<br>Ethe<br>.1<br>.2<br>.3<br>Sub   | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment<br>FTTdp – Ultra Broadband<br>Bandwidth management<br>Wavelength management<br>deployment optimization<br>ernet point-to-point<br>Ethernet point-to-point solutions<br>Transmission technologies  |                            |  |
| 5 | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2<br>4.3<br>4.3.<br>4.3.<br>4.3.<br>4.4<br>4.5  | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>PON<br>Ethe<br>.1<br>.2<br>.3<br>Sub<br>Soft   | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment<br>FTTdp – Ultra Broadband<br>Bandwidth management<br>Wavelength management<br>Udeployment optimization<br>renet point-to-point<br>Ethernet point-to-point solutions<br>Transmission technologies<br>RF-based video solutions<br>scriber equipment<br>warized and Virtualized Network Solutions   |                            |  |
| 5 | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2<br>4.3<br>4.3.<br>4.3.<br>4.3.<br>4.4<br>4.5  | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>PON<br>Ethe<br>.1<br>.2<br>.3<br>Sub<br>Soft   | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment<br>FTTdp – Ultra Broadband<br>Bandwidth management<br>Wavelength management<br>U deployment optimization<br>In deployment optimization<br>Ethernet point-to-point<br>Ethernet point-to-point solutions<br>Transmission technologies<br>RF-based video solutions<br>scriber equipment  |                            |  |
| 5 | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.4<br>4.5<br>Infr   | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>Ethe<br>.1<br>.3<br>Sub<br>Soft<br>astrue<br>Sha   | PON solutions         PON active equipment         FTTdp – Ultra Broadband         Bandwidth management         Wavelength management         I deployment optimization         ernet point-to-point         Ethernet point-to-point solutions         Transmission technologies         RF-based video solutions         scriber equipment         warized and Virtualized Network Solutions         cture Sharing   |                            |  |
| 5 | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.4<br>4.5<br>Infr<br>5.1  | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>PON<br>Ethe<br>.1<br>.2<br>.3<br>Sub<br>Soft<br>astrue<br>Sha<br>Con   | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment<br>FTTdp – Ultra Broadband<br>Bandwidth management<br>Wavelength management<br>Wavelength management<br>Vavelength management<br>Transmission topimization<br>Ethernet point-to-point solutions<br>Transmission technologies<br>RF-based video solutions<br>scriber equipment<br>warized and Virtualized Network Solutions<br>cture Sharing<br>ring options at various layers   |                            |  |
| 5 | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>5.1<br>5.2<br>5.3  | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>PON<br>Ethe<br>.1<br>.2<br>.3<br>Sub<br>Soft<br>astrue<br>Sha<br>Con<br>Reg                                  | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment<br>FTTdp – Ultra Broadband<br>Bandwidth management<br>Wavelength management<br>Wavelength management<br>U deployment optimization<br>renet point-to-point<br>Ethernet point-to-point solutions<br>Transmission technologies<br>RF-based video solutions<br>scriber equipment<br>warized and Virtualized Network Solutions<br>cture Sharing<br>ring options at various layers<br>parison of unbundling strategies  |                            |  |
|   | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>5.1<br>5.2<br>5.3  | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>PON<br>Ethe<br>.1<br>.2<br>.3<br>Sub<br>Soft<br>astrue<br>Reg<br>astrue                                      | PON solutions         PON active equipment         FTTdp – Ultra Broadband         Bandwidth management         Wavelength management         I deployment optimization         ernet point-to-point         Ethernet point-to-point solutions         Transmission technologies         RF-based video solutions         scriber equipment         warized and Virtualized Network Solutions         cture Sharing         ring options at various layers         aparison of unbundling strategies         ulation  |                            |  |
|   | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.4<br>4.5<br>Infr<br>5.1<br>5.2<br>5.3<br>Infr                     | .1<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>PON<br>Ethe<br>.1<br>.2<br>.3<br>Sub<br>Soft<br>astrue<br>Sha<br>Con<br>Reg<br>astrue<br>Poir                      | PON solutions         PON active equipment         FTTdp – Ultra Broadband         Bandwidth management         Wavelength management         I deployment optimization         ernet point-to-point         Ethernet point-to-point solutions         Transmission technologies         RF-based video solutions         scriber equipment         warized and Virtualized Network Solutions         cture Sharing         ing options at various layers         ingarison of unbundling strategies         ulation         cture Network Elements   |                            |  |
|   | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.4<br>4.5<br>Infr<br>5.1<br>5.2<br>5.3<br>Infr<br>6.1                             | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>PON<br>Ethe<br>.1<br>.2<br>.3<br>Sub<br>Soft<br>astrue<br>Sha<br>Con<br>Reg<br>astrue<br>Poir<br>Fee         | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment   |                            |  |
|   | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.4<br>4.5<br>5.1<br>5.2<br>5.3<br>Infra<br>6.1<br>6.2                      | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>PON<br>Ethe<br>.1<br>.2<br>.3<br>Sub<br>Soft<br>astrue<br>Reg<br>astrue<br>Fibr                              | PON solutions         PON active equipment         FTTdp – Ultra Broadband         Bandwidth management         Wavelength management         I deployment optimization         ernet point-to-point         Ethernet point-to-point solutions         Transmission technologies         RF-based video solutions         scriber equipment         warized and Virtualized Network Solutions         cture Sharing         ing options at various layers         ingarison of unbundling strategies         ulation         cture Network Elements         t of Presence (PoP)         der Network |                            |  |
|   | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.4<br>4.5<br>1nfr<br>5.1<br>5.2<br>5.3<br>1nfr<br>6.1<br>6.2<br>6.3               | .1<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>PON<br>Ethe<br>.1<br>.2<br>.3<br>Sub<br>Soft<br>astrue<br>Sha<br>Con<br>Reg<br>astrue<br>Fibro<br>Fibro            | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment<br>FTTdp – Ultra Broadband<br>Bandwidth management<br>Wavelength management<br>U deployment optimization<br>Protection point-to-point<br>Ethernet point-to-point solutions<br>Transmission technologies<br>RF-based video solutions<br>scriber equipment<br>warized and Virtualized Network Solutions<br>cture Sharing<br>parison of unbundling strategies<br>ulation<br>cture Network Elements<br>t of Presence (PoP)<br>der Network<br>e Distribution Point (FDP)   |                            |  |
|   | 4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.1.<br>4.2<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.3<br>4.4<br>4.5<br>1nfr<br>5.1<br>5.2<br>5.3<br>1nfr<br>6.1<br>6.2<br>6.3<br>6.4<br>6.5 | .1<br>.2<br>.3<br>.4<br>.5<br>PON<br>Ethe<br>.1<br>.2<br>.3<br>Sub<br>Soft<br>astrue<br>Sha<br>Con<br>Reg<br>astrue<br>Fibr<br>Dist<br>MDI | PON solutions<br>PON active equipment   |                            |  |

|   |         | er Cabling  |    |
|---|---------|---|----|
|   | 7.3 Fib | re in the Home cabling – general considerations         |    |
|   | 7.3.1   | Fibre characteristics                                   |    |
|   | 7.3.2   | Splicing compatibility between different fibre types    |    |
|   | 7.3.3   | Bend radius requirements                                |    |
|   | 7.3.4   | Cable type  | 69 |
|   | 7.3.5   | Outdoor cable   | 69 |
|   | 7.3.6   | Indoor cable  |    |
|   | 7.3.7   | Colour coding of fibres                                 |    |
|   | 7.3.8   | Micro-duct cabling for installation by blowing          |    |
|   | 7.3.9   | Cables containing flammable materials                   |    |
|   | 7.4 Ge  | neral requirements at the BEP                           |    |
|   | 7.4.1   | Fusion splice at the BEP                                | 71 |
|   | 7.4.2   | Connection box at the BEP                               |    |
|   | 7.4.3   | Splice tray   | 72 |
|   | 7.4.4   | Positioning the BEP                                     | 73 |
|   |         | or distributor  |    |
|   |         | tical telecommunications outlet (OTO)                   |    |
|   | 7.6.1   | Fibre type and connection characteristics in the OTO    |    |
|   | 7.6.2   | Optical connectors                                      |    |
|   | 7.6.3   | Splices   |    |
|   | 7.6.4   | Positioning the OTO                                     |    |
|   | 7.6.5   | Testing the in-house cabling, the BEP-OTO link          |    |
|   |         | Iti Dwelling Unit Infrastructure                        |    |
|   | 7.7.1   | Introduction to Multi Dwelling Unit Infrastructure      |    |
|   | 7.7.2   | Connectorized Products                                  |    |
|   | 7.7.3   | Externally or Façade Cabled Pre-Connectorized Solutions |    |
|   | 7.7.4   | Micro-ducts Inside The MDU                              |    |
|   | 7.7.5   | Small Diameter Drop Cables                              |    |
|   | 7.7.6   | Riser Cable with Reinforced Retractable Fibre           |    |
|   | 7.7.7   | Adhesive Fibre Systems                                  |    |
|   | 7.7.8   | Indexing On Vertical Cable                              |    |
|   | 7.7.9   | Cascaded Splitters                                      |    |
|   | 7.7.10  | Field-Installable Connectors                            |    |
|   |         | PE (SPE)  |    |
|   |         | neral safety requirements                               |    |
|   | 7.9.1   | Laser safety  |    |
|   |         | re in the Home workflow                                 |    |
|   | 7.10.1  | General Fibre in the Home environment                   |    |
|   | 7.10.2  | Acquisition   |    |
|   | 7.10.3  | Sales   |    |
|   | 7.10.4  | Installation Preparation                                |    |
|   | 7.10.5  | Installation  |    |
| ~ | 7.10.6  | IT systems  |    |
| 8 |         | ment Techniques   |    |
|   |         | ct infrastructure                                       |    |
|   | 8.1.1   | Conventional sub-ducts vs micro-ducts                   |    |
|   | 8.1.2   | Micro-duct solutions                                    |    |

| 8          | 3.1.3    | Micro-duct accessories                                    | 102 |
|------------|----------|---|-----|
| 8          | 3.1.4    | Fibre optic cables for FTTH                               | 103 |
| 8.2        | Cab      | le Installation techniques                                | 106 |
| 8          | 3.2.1    | Duct Cable installation techniques                        | 106 |
| 8          | 3.2.2    | Direct buried cables                                      | 111 |
| 8          | 3.2.3    | Other Deployment techniques                               | 113 |
| 8          | 3.2.4    | Aerial cables   | 115 |
| 8.3        | Duc      | t installation techniques                                 | 120 |
| 8          | 3.3.1    | Micro-ducts installed by pulling                          | 120 |
| 8          | 3.3.2    | Micro-ducts installed by air blowing                      | 120 |
| 8          | 3.3.3    | Micro-ducts installed by floating                         | 121 |
| 8          | 3.3.4    | Micro-ducts buried in trench                              | 121 |
| 8          | 3.3.5    | Micro-ducts buried in micro-trench                        | 122 |
| 8          | 3.3.6    | Micro ducts installed by no-dig technique                 | 123 |
| 8          | 3.3.7    | Ducts installed by mole ploughing                         | 123 |
| 8          | 3.3.8    | Ducts installed by rockwheel                              | 124 |
| 8          | 3.3.9    | Aerial micro-ducts  | 125 |
| 8          | 3.3.10   | Connection of micro-ducts                                 | 125 |
| 9 F        | Fibre an | d Fibre Management  | 127 |
| 9.1        | Cho      | ice of FTTH optical fibre                                 | 127 |
| -          | 9.1.1    | Optical fibre basics                                      | 127 |
| -          | 9.1.2    | Single-mode fibre   |     |
| 9          | 9.1.3    | Graded-index multimode fibres                             | 129 |
| 9          | 9.1.4    | Bend insensitive fibre                                    | 129 |
| 9.2        |          | e optic termination                                       |     |
| -          | 9.2.1    | Optical Distribution Frames                               |     |
| -          | 9.2.2    | Street cabinets   |     |
| -          | 9.2.3    | Underground Distribution Systems                          |     |
| -          | 9.2.4    | Closure Storage in Access Chambers                        |     |
| 9.3        |          | nectors, Patch cords and Pigtails                         |     |
|            | 9.3.1    | Common connector types                                    |     |
|            | 9.3.2    | Return loss   |     |
| -          | 9.3.3    | Insertion loss  |     |
| -          | 9.3.4    | Extrinsic losses  |     |
| 9.4        |          | e optic splicing  |     |
| -          | 9.4.1    | Fusion splicing   |     |
| -          | 9.4.2    | Mechanical splicing                                       |     |
| 9.5        |          | cal splitters   |     |
|            | 9.5.1    | Fused bi-conic taper                                      |     |
| -          | 9.5.2    | Planar splitter<br>lity grades for fibre-optic connectors |     |
| 9.6<br>9.7 |          | h-to-each values  |     |
| 9.7<br>9.8 |          | in values   |     |
| 9.9        |          | ufacturer specifications and real usage conditions        |     |
|            |          | ns and Maintenance  |     |
| 10.1       | •        | rational Efficiency in FTTH Networks                      |     |
| 1          | 10.1.1   | Make the Right Strategic Decisions                        |     |
| 1          | 10.1.2   | Network Documentation                                     | 153 |
| 1          | 10.1.3   | Standardise and Streamline OAM Processes                  | 156 |
|            |          |   |     |

| 10.1.4     | Conclusions of operational efficiency                                     | 160       |
|------------|---|-----------|
| 10.2 Dep   | loyment and maintenance guidelines  | 160       |
| 10.2.1     | General considerations related to safety                                  | 160       |
| 10.2.2     | General considerations about constructions and equipment                  | 161       |
| 10.2.3     | General considerations about cabling methods                              |           |
| 10.2.4     | Integrity and pressure test for conduits                                  | 163       |
| 10.2.5     | General considerations about internal operation and maintenance gu<br>165 | uidelines |
| 11 FTTH Te | est Guidelines  | 166       |
| 11.1 Con   | nector care   | 166       |
| 11.1.1     | Why is it important to clean connectors?                                  | 166       |
| 11.1.2     | What are the possible contaminants?                                       | 166       |
| 11.1.3     | What components need to be inspected and cleaned?                         | 169       |
| 11.1.4     | When should a connector be inspected and cleaned?                         | 169       |
| 11.1.5     | How to check connectors   |           |
| 11.1.6     | Inspection instructions   |           |
| 11.1.7     | Tools needed for inspection   |           |
| 11.1.8     | Cleaning wipes and tools  |           |
|            | ting FTTH networks during construction                                    |           |
| 11.2.1     | Method 1: Use of optical loss test sets                                   |           |
| 11.2.2     | Method 2: Use of an OTDR  |           |
| •••=•=     | /ice activation   |           |
| 11.3.1     | Multiple testing locations  |           |
| 11.3.2     | Testing next generation PON   |           |
| 11.3.3     | Service activation reporting  |           |
|            | etwork Monitoring and Troubleshooting                                     |           |
|            | H Network monitoring  |           |
| 12.1.1     | Distinguishing between the different segments of a PON using an O         |           |
| 12.1.2     | FTTH Network Monitoring System Approach                                   |           |
|            | H network troubleshooting   |           |
| 12.2.1     | Fibre Network troubleshooting   |           |
| 12.2.2     | In-home wiring troubleshooting  |           |
|            | nmary of optical testing tools  |           |
|            | cal Intrusion Detection Monitoring  |           |
| 12.4.1     | Basic system function   |           |
| 13 FTTH St | andardization and Terminology Overview                                    |           |
|            | oduction  |           |
| 13.2 Maj   | or standardization activities and guidelines                              | 195       |
| 13.2.1     | IEC TC 86, SC 86A, SC 86B, SC 86C   | 195       |
| 13.2.2     | ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 25   | 196       |
| 13.2.3     | ITU   | 196       |
| 13.2.4     | CENELEC   | 197       |
| 13.2.5     | IEEE P802.3   | 197       |
| 13.2.6     | Broadband Forum   | 198       |
| 13.2.7     | ETSI  |           |
|            | Deploying FTTH today "10 most frequently asked questions"                 |           |
|            |   |           |
| -          |   |           |



# 1 Introduction

Fibre to the Home (FTTH) has been proven to be the shining star of the NGA (Next Generation Access) family and, for the last decade, has provided an excellent platform for high or ultra-high speed fixed access technologies.

An interesting trend that has become more apparent is that FTTH technology is not limited to the "home" or to the end-user. With the introduction of new standards, such as NG-PON2, FTTH networks will be able to take on more functions, such as, mobile backhaul and front haul, enterprise customers and cloud connectivity. Together with existing Point-to-Multipoint PON and Point-to-Point Ethernet technologies, this will broaden the toolbox that the operator has in which to monetize his investment and build a sustainable completive position on FTTH.

5G is seen as the next evolutionary technology and is expected to offer significant performance improvement, e.g. at least 10Gbps capacity, ultra-low latency (1ms). Furthermore it will lead to higher densification for the implementation and addition of small cells. FTTH passive and active technologies are able to support the backhaul and front haul more efficiently. In addition, a cost-effective 5G rollout will benefit from the fixed-mobile integrated network planning in terms of FTTH.

This Handbook will discuss state-of-the-art solutions; ranging from how to plan and build networks, how to deal with fibre and fibre architectures, what type of equipment is now available, how to operate/manage the network and much more. It is clear that FTTH technology has reached maturity and each different technological area has its own roadmap to cover todays and tomorrows requirements. Many of the technology trends will be described here.

This is the 8th edition of the Handbook. Every edition grows in complexity and detail as knowledge, experience and successful implementation of deployment by the contributors and members of the Council increases. Collating this knowledge and experience and detailing the success achieved within the covers of this Handbook, while preserving the impartiality of the Council, is a recurring challenge and requires the dedication of the members of the Deployment and Operations Committee.

The members of the Deployment and Operations Committee have made significant improvements to almost all the chapters of this edition. These changes are the result of broad and professional experience and provide a clearer structure, more precise definitions, updated methodologies and advanced technical solutions.

One of the objectives of the Council is to establish a professional arena which promotes FTTH based on internationally-accepted standards and which have been adopted and become the common value of the members.

This Handbook can only be used as a reference by our readers if they are willing to submit their views and opinions which the Committee will consider whether to implement into future releases.

This Handbook is the property of all professionals within the FTTH field. The main objective, which the editors are committed to maintaining, is its capacity to develop year after year to the benefit of all parties.



# 2 FTTH Network Description

A fibre to the home (FTTH) network constitutes a fibre-based access network, connecting a large number of end-users to a central point known as an access node or point of presence (POP). Each access node contains the necessary electronic transmission (active) equipment to provide the applications and services, using optical fibre to the subscriber. Each access node, within a large municipality or region, is connected to a larger metropolitan or urban fibre network.

Access networks may connect some of the following:

- fixed wireless network antenna, for example, wireless LAN or WiMAX
- mobile network base stations
- subscribers in SFUs (single family units) or MDUs (multi-dwelling units)
- larger buildings such as schools, hospitals and businesses
- key security and monitoring structures such as surveillance cameras, security alarms and control devices

The FTTH network may form part of a wider area or access network.

# 2.1 The FTTH network environment

The deployment of fibre closer to the subscriber may require the fibre infrastructure to be located on public and/or private land and within public and/or private properties.



Figure 1: Type of FTTH site

The physical environment can be broadly split into:

- city
- open residential
- rural
- building type and density single homes or MDUs



Not only does each physical environment constitute different subscriber dwelling densities (per sq km), but country conditions must also be taken into account.

The nature of the site will be a key factor in deciding the most appropriate network design and architecture. Types include:

- Greenfield new build where the network will be installed at the same time as the buildings
- Brownfield buildings are already in place but the existing infrastructure is of a low standard
- Overbuild adding to the existing infrastructure

The main influences on the method of infrastructure deployment are:

- type of FTTH site
- size of the FTTH network
- initial cost of the infrastructure deployment (CAPEX)
- running costs for the network operation and maintenance (OPEX)
- network architecture, for example PON or Active Ethernet
- local conditions, for example, local labour costs, local authority restrictions (traffic control) and others

The choice of fibre deployment method and technology will determine CAPEX and OPEX, as well as the reliability of the network. These costs can be optimised by choosing the most appropriate active solution combined with the most appropriate infrastructure deployment methodology. These methods, which are described later, include:

- conventional underground duct and cable
- blown micro-ducts and cable
- direct buried cable
- aerial cable
- "other right of way" solutions

Key functional requirements for an FTTH network include:

- provision of high-bandwidth services and content to each subscriber
- a flexible network architecture design with capacity to meet future needs
- direct fibre connection of each end-user directly to the active equipment, ensuring maximum available capacity for future service demands
- support for future network upgrades and expansion
- minimal disruption during network deployment, to ensure fibre networks gain acceptance by network owners and to provide benefit to FTTH subscribers

When designing and building FTTH networks, it is helpful to understand the challenges and tradeoffs facing potential network owners and operators. Some challenges may result in conflicts between functionality and economic demands.

The FTTH network builder must present a profitable business case, balancing capital expenses with operating costs while ensuring revenue generation. A more detailed analysis of the main influences on the business case for FTTH networks is available in the FTTH Business Guide from the FTTH Council Europe.



# 2.2 FTTx Networks Architecture

Variations of the above mentioned basic network architectures are possible depending on the number of fibres, position of splitters (branching points) and aggregation points. Choosing the right network architecture often generates considerable debate especially as there is often no clear winner in today's market as different architectures suit different operator requirements, business and technical priorities.

Fibre to the home (FTTH) – Each subscriber is connected by a dedicated fibre to a port on the equipment in the POP, or to the passive optical splitter, using shared feeder fibre to the POP and 100BASE-BX10 or 1000BASE-BX10 transmission for Ethernet technology or GPON (EPON) technology in case of point-to-multipoint topology.

Fibre to the building (FTTB) – each optical termination box in the building (often located in the basement) is connected by a dedicated fibre to a port in the equipment in the POP, or to an optical splitter which uses shared feeder fibre to the POP. The connections between subscribers and the building switch are not fibre but can be copper based and involve some form of Ethernet transport suited to the medium available in the vertical cabling. In some cases building switches are not individually connected to the POP but are interconnected in a chain or ring structure in order to utilize existing fibres deployed in particular topologies. This also saves fibres and ports in the POP. The concept of routing fibre directly into the home from the POP or through the use of optical splitters, without involving switches in the building, brings us back to the FTTH scenario.

Fibre to the curb (FTTC) – each switch/or DSL access multiplexer (DSLAM), often found in a street cabinet, is connected to the POP via a single fibre or a pair of fibres, carrying the aggregated traffic of the neighbourhood via Gigabit Ethernet or 10 Gigabit Ethernet connection. The switches in the street cabinet are not fibre but can be copper based using VDSL2 or VDSL2 Vectoring. This architecture is sometimes called "Active Ethernet" as it requires active network elements in the field.

Fibre to the Distribution Point (FTTDp) – this solution has been proposed in the last three years. Connecting the POP to the Distribution Point via the optical cable and then from the Distribution Point to the end-user premises via existing copper infrastructure. The Distribution Points could be a hand-hole, a drop box on the pole or located in the basement of a building. This architecture could support VDSL or G.Fast technology for a short last mile, normally less than 250m.

This Handbook will, however, concentrate on FTTH/B deployments as in the long term these are considered the target architecture due to their virtually unlimited scalability.





Figure 2: Different types of FTTx networks.

# 2.3 FTTH Topology and Technology

The network architecture refers to the design of a communication network and provides a framework for the specification of the network from physical components to services. The access network is the part of the communications network that directly connects to end-users.

In order to specify the interworking of passive and active infrastructure, it is important to make a clear distinction between the topologies used for the deployment of the fibres (the passive infrastructure) and the technologies used to transport data over the fibres (the active equipment).

The two most widely used topologies are point-to-multipoint, which is often combined with a passive optical network (PON) technology, and point-to-point, which typically uses Ethernet transmission technologies.



Figure 3: Point to Multi-Point (P2MP)



Figure 4: Point to Point (P2P)



**Point-to-multipoint topologies** (P2MP) provide a single "feeder" fibre from the central office (or POP) to a branching point and from there one individual, dedicated fibre is deployed to the subscriber. A passive optical network technology such as GPON uses passive optical splitters at the branching point(s) and the Data is encoded so that users only receive data intended for them.

Active Ethernet technology can also be used to control subscriber access in a point-to-multipoint topology requiring the placement of Ethernet switches in the field. Each subscriber has a logical point-to-point connection and the end-user sends and receives only the data intended for him or her.

**Point-to-point topologies** (P2P) provide dedicated fibres between the Access Node (or POP) and the subscriber. Each subscriber has a direct connection with a dedicated fibre. The route from the central office (CO) to the subscriber will probably consist of several sections of fibres joined with splices or connectors, but provides a continuous optical path from the Access Node to the home. Most existing point-to-point FTTH deployments use Ethernet, which can be mixed with other transmission schemes for business applications (e.g. Fibre Channel, SDH/SONET). This topology can also include PON technologies by placing the passive optical splitters in the Access Node.

Whatever the network architecture, it is important to consider how the design may affect the evolution of the network in the future. An FTTH network is a long-term investment and the anticipated lifetime of the cable in the ground is at least 25 years, however, the working lifetime will probably be much longer. With the active equipment likely to be upgraded several times in this timeframe, it should be possible to reuse the infrastructure. So decisions made at the start of an FTTH project will have long term consequences.

### 2.4 Network layers

An FTTH network can comprise of a number of different layers: the passive infrastructure involving ducts, fibres, enclosures and other outside plants; the active network using electrical equipment; the retail services providing internet connectivity and managed services, such as IPTV; and not least, the end-users. An additional layer can also be included: the content layer, located above the retail services layer and the end users. This can be exploited commercially by so-called "over the top" content providers.



Figure 5: FTTH network layers (source: Alcatel-Lucent).



This technological structure has implications in the way an FTTH network is organised and operated. For example:

**Passive infrastructure** involving physical elements are required to build the fibre network. This includes the optical fibre, trenches, ducts and poles on which it is deployed, fibre enclosures, optical distribution frames, patch panels, splicing shelves and so on. The organisation responsible for this layer would also normally be responsible for network route planning, right-of-way negotiations as well as civil works necessary for the installation of the fibre.

Active network refers to the electronic network equipment needed to bring the passive infrastructure alive, as well as the operational support systems required to commercialize the fibre connectivity. The party in charge of this layer will design, build and operate the active equipment part of the network.

**Retail services** become involved once the passive and active layers are in place. This layer is where basic internet connectivity and other managed services, such as IPTV, are packaged and presented to consumers and businesses. Besides providing technical support, the company responsible for this layer is alo in charge of customer acquisition, go-to-market strategies and customer service.

Each network layer has a corresponding function. The network owner is in charge of the first layer, although they may outsource its construction to a third party. The network operator owns the active equipment, while the retail services are provided by the internet service provider (ISP).

See also FTTH Business Guide, Chapter 2

# 2.5 Open Access Networks

The term "open access" implies a resource that is made available to clients, other than the owner, on fair and non-discriminatory terms; in other words, the price for access is the same for all clients and is hopefully less than the cost of building a separate infrastructure.

In the context of telecommunications networks, "open access" typically means the access granted to multiple service providers to wholesale services in the local access network enabling them to reach the subscriber without the need to deploy a new fibre access network. The wholesale pricing structure is transparent and the same for all service providers. Wholesale products are offered at different levels throughout the infrastructure based on the type of open access model:

**Passive open access infrastructure** like ducts, sewers, poles, dark fibre and wave-lengths, offer telecommunications operators the opportunity to share a passive infrastructure and deploy their own infrastructures on top of delivering services.

Active open access infrastructure such as Ethernet layer-2 and IP layer-3 make it possible for service providers offering residential, business and public services to share a common active infrastructure that is built by a passive infrastructure player and operated by an active infrastructure player.





Figure 6: Open access models (source: Alcatel-Lucent)

See also FTTH Business Guide, Chapter 2



# 3 Network Planning and Design

The deployment cost per Home Passed can amount to thousands of euros in CAPEX for a FTTH network. Therefore it is not unusual for FTTH projects to run into hundreds of millions of euros just for establishing the passive infrastructure. Such large investments require careful planning to minimize financial risk and form the foundation of a cost efficient and flexible network that can be effectively realised and managed during design phases through to conveying subscriber traffic or wholesale services.

A network deployment project is typically organised in three distinct phases:

- Strategic network planning has two main outputs. Firstly, the general business case decision determines if, where and when FTTH should be rolled out. Secondly, strategic decisions relating to, for example, the type of architecture that will be implemented, and the choice of cable and duct technologies.
- **High-level network design** is the phase where structural decisions for a particular geographical planning area are made. These include the placement of network elements (distribution points, branch points, etc.) and connectivity decisions (which location serves a particular area) and a preliminary bill of materials, including the installation length of cables and ducts as well as quantities for the various types of hardware. The aim is to generate the lowest cost network plan within the boundaries of the strategic decisions made in the previous planning phase.
- **Detailed network design** is the final planning step and the point at which the "to- build" plan is generated. This includes the network documentation that can be passed to engineering departments or 3rd party construction companies. Further material included in this planning phase are detailed connection information such as a splicing plan, the labelling scheme and micro-duct connections.

Throughout the planning and design stages detailed geographical information concerning the targeted areas and regions needs to be available. This chapter will also explain the type of data needed and how it can be gathered.

Finally a presentation of different software solutions used in the planning and design of a network will also be provided.

# 3.1 Strategic network planning

Major business decisions are made in this first planning stage. The key question is whether to invest at all in a proposed FTTH network.

To answer this question, the planner needs accurate costs not only for deploying the network, but also for activating subscribers and maintaining the network during its lifetime. In addition the planner will also require some realistic predictions for subscriber adoption of services and related revenues.

In this phase it will be necessary to make a decision on the technologies and architecture to be used for the deployment as well as deciding where and when to deploy the network.

#### What methods, components and technologies will be used to build the network?

The network architecture dictates how the network should be rolled out. It comprises of a set of network design rules, deployment methods and material specifications. Some of these rules may be



fixed at the start of a rollout project (driven by local circumstances and regulations), others may initially be left open and are expected to be selected in a way that best suits the project objectives. Many of these rules are explained in detail in other chapters as indicated in the list below.

Typical options to be evaluated:

- Where to terminate the fibre? In front of each building (Fibre to the Door), in the cellar of each building (Fibre to the Building), or within each individual housing unit (Fibre to the Home)? (see Chapter 2)
- Choice of technologies: whether to go for P2P or P2MP or a mix of both (see Chapter 4)
- How much spare capacity needs to be included for future upgrades in each part of the network? (see Chapter 10)
- How many fibres for each demand point?
- Infrastructure pathways allowed: a completely buried infrastructure or aerial lines? Shall negotiations with the local utility company be instigated to gain access to their existing infrastructure? What is the negotiation policy regarding landowners and rights-of-way? (see Chapter 8)
- Roll-out technologies: micro-trenching and micro-ducts usage? Or direct buried cable? (see Chapter 8)
- Number of levels in the network hierarchy? One or more distribution layer?
- Cable sizes and ducts to be installed in the feeder, distribution and drop areas. To use midspan access or not? (see Chapter 6)
- What is the capacity of fibres and/or cables that can be terminated within a certain cabinet or closure?
- What are the technologies used within MDUs to connect the apartments? (see Chapter 7)
- Where to place splitters in the network? (see Chapter 6)

As is obvious from the options noted above, there are many possible technologies and component choices available when building FTTH networks. The most cost-effective option can only be determined by applying the different engineering rules and constraints for each approach to the actual geography of the region and then comparing the bottom-line results. Each project will have a different optimal selection of technologies which will depend on the local situation, including local geography, regulatory obligations, the market situation and much more.

As stated above, one of the factors impacting the network architecture is local geography. Whether a network is planned for an area with an existing high or a low population density, the approach will be completely different as the optimal architecture and design rules for these networks will differ greatly:

- In a dense area, one provider will choose to group more subscribers on a single aggregation point and achieve a relatively good filling of all aggregation points; however in rural areas distance between buildings and aggregation points may become a more important constraint in the design than capacity of each aggregation point, resulting in a broader variation in filling of aggregation points. In rural areas defining aggregation points becomes a more complex task with a larger dispersion in results.
- In dense areas there are, in general, more equivalent options for grouping buildings around aggregation points, as well as for routing the cables between aggregation points and buildings. In rural areas there are less equivalent alternatives.
- Rural areas will have more available options for placing cabinets, while in urban areas spaces are limited and thus more constraints apply for cabinet placement.



- Unit costs for deploying cables can differ significantly between urban and rural areas: in rural areas, one meter of trenching will be less expensive than similar trenching in urban areas, as, for example, the type of pavement in the two areas differs as does the associated cost of restoring the individual pavements. Additionally, more aerial deployments are used in rural areas. Poles are widely available and easily planned. They are accepted as landscape elements. But other issues are to be considered here – when planning a rural network, the cables' weight must be carefully monitored. Avoiding overweight will dictate cable capacity. Also, weather considerations are to be included in the planning phase as ice and strong winds can compromise the exploitation of an aerial fibre telecom network. Also, in rural areas, poles used initially for high voltage electricity transport can be re-used for fibre roll-out which is almost never the case in European urban areas. All this will impact on the relationship between labour and material costs of both types of deployment, thus requiring a different set of design rules to be used for achieving minimal costs.
- Equipment vendors have developed special deployment methods and cable types for urban versus rural deployments.
- Another topic to be considered is landscape obstacle crossings. In rural areas the use of heavy machinery will be relatively easy and this will allow for specific deployment technologies to be put to action. Examples are micro-trenching and directional drilling.
- Combining existing ducts with routes through newly installed ducts and aerial infrastructure are inevitable and - finally - welcome solutions. Planning and design software products excel at providing rapid multiple scenarios. The generated network design can be optimized to comply with different parameters and restrictions, with cost being the most obvious but not the only one.

In many cases, cost is not the only consideration. In order to make the right decisions at this early stage, it is important to conduct an in-depth evaluation of the different scenarios. The impact of a particular choice on overall deployment costs is crucial, of course, but other aspects such as quality, bandwidth and reliability should also be considered. The choices to be made are often framed along the lines: "Is it worthwhile making this additional investment to gain extra quality/bandwidth/reliability etc. Will it deliver?"

#### Estimating project costs

When building a business case, both CAPEX and OPEX costs for the FTTH project will need to be estimated. Therefore it is recommended that a cost model that includes all possible expenditures be established. Extensive and accurate planning with a robust investment model makes it possible to mitigate the risk of costs getting out of control, which is critical for the network owners and also for subcontractors working on fixed-price projects.

It is important to base the cost analysis on real local data, as there can be major differences between the various geographical areas – even those with similar population densities. Extrapolations and benchmarking should be avoided where possible.

The chosen technologies and architectures will have a big impact on costs. A clear view of the various costs of deploying and maintaining the FTTH network will need to include:

- labour cost for civil works
- material cost per equipment type
- installation, test and measurement service costs
- network maintenance costs
- energy costs for active equipment
- costs related to establishing and maintaining POPs, FCPs
- costs related to rights of way



A number of different parties might be responsible for executing the various activities or deploying different regions. Depending on the type of contract with these parties, their input may be based on a fixed price or not. This will impact on the cost model. In addition, not all activities will be carried out at the same time; perhaps some parts might only be built when activating the subscriber. All of this needs to be included in the cost model.

However, not all costs may be the responsibility of the infrastructure owner. A wide range of business models exist; from the case of the infrastructure-owner whose possession is limited to the passive layer, relying on other companies to manage and commercialize the access network (often the case for rural public-funded networks), to the integrated operator models where the infrastructure is owned by the commercial operator, with all intermediate models possible (See the FTTH Business Guide from the FTTH Council Europe). Depending on the applicable business model some parts of the network will be built by the infrastructure owner and some parts might be built by the service provider (active equipment).

A good cost model is a flexible one. As indicated above, there are different parties involved in the project due to the type of technical and regulatory requirements that need to be taken into account. Throughout the project situations may occur which impact on the cost model, therefore adaptability is key in managing the project efficiently.

#### Where will the FTTH network be deployed?

By comparing different regions in terms of expenditure and revenues, a decision can be made on where to deploy the FTTH network. In reality, investors in FTTH have different profiles. Private investors will put more emphasis on financial performance while public investors have to serve all potential subscribers equally, sometimes over huge areas, with nationwide deployment being considered. Ideally, both commercial interests and service availability should be incorporated.

When concentrating solely on cost, it is generally agreed that there is a clear influence regarding population density on average cost per home passed. Nevertheless using only (average) population density when comparing areas to ascertain their attractivity to deploy an FTTH network can be costly. The differences in density on certain streets or areas with large MDUs can still cause variations in cost of more than 40% between two areas of similar density. Therefore it is strongly recommended to evaluate all candidate areas in detail rather than working with representative areas and extrapolations. However, not all countries have accurate data covering location of existing buildings and number of housing units per building. This, of course, can result in uncertainties.

Compiling a detailed analysis of the variations in cost per home for deploying an FTTH network within a large area, results in a cost/coverage statistic for a region. As illustrated in the figure below, the average cost per home passed decreases if the most expensive X% of homes are excluded from the deployment. This is very useful information when analysing the need for public funding in certain areas, for example, by classifying sub-areas into white, grey and black areas.

The example below illustrates the situation for a specific region that includes more than 100,000 homes comprising of a mix of rural and urban areas. In this case the influence of excluding the more rural parts from the deployment can drastically lower the cost per home passed. Note that this curve can vary dramatically for different regions.





Figure 7: Example of cost/coverage curve: cost per home in function of the percentage of homes passed.

Incorporating geo-marketing data and comparing different areas in their trade-off between required investments (cost per home passed) and expected revenues (linked to expected percentage of homes passed that will be connected), will further improve the prioritization of areas. In addition, when using this combined evaluation, several cases have identified improvements of between 10% and 20% on Return on Investment.

Regulatory specifications from the telco regulatory offices can also involve complexities that need to be followed or cover enforced obligations, such as minimum coverage (many countries wish to avoid the so-called Digital Divide problem).

#### In which order will the sub-areas of the network be deployed?

When an FTTH project covers a large geographical area, the construction process can easily take several years. The longer the deployment time-frame, the more important it becomes to determine the optimal order for rolling out the network in a series of sub-areas.

There are a number of options available, such as optimizing the P&L over time is certainly important but not the only consideration. A number of options (possibly depending on the type of area) are:

- Economical: areas with best revenue generation potential first connect business users first etc.
- Visionary: areas with higher growth rate potential first
- Pragmatic: areas most easy to deploy first where other infrastructure works are planned
- Political: areas with worst existing connectivity first
- Financial: areas where co-investments agreements are possible

In the case where optimizing the P&L is the focus, by selecting the right order, one can maximize the take-up rate of the initial deployments, not only increasing the initial revenues, but also maximizing the positive message that can be spread when convincing other potential subscribers and investors in later phases by showing high take-up rates.



To promote this type of optimization, techniques of demand aggregation exist that are based on interaction with the potential subscribers and measure their interest. Demand aggregation may be implemented with a variety of means, from door to door inquiries to the use of sophisticated web-based tools.

# 3.2 High-level network design

Having decided the extent of the project area, attention now turns to the structure of the network. Main points of this planning stage involve a reliable estimate of the anticipated investment, location of POPs and FCPs, decisions about connectivity and which location will serve which specific area, as well as a bill of materials.

High-level network design starts with the following inputs based on the results of the strategic network planning phase:

- Target area
- Network architecture

Complexity is inherent, as at least one physical fibre, allowing optical continuity, must be delivered to the home from a central office through various intermediate nodes. If the number and location of demand points are not correctly evaluated, this may result in rolling out a network that is unable to support all the homes or conversely is over-dimensioned and therefore unnecessarily costly. This situation differs from the HFC network where it is relatively easy to "extend" an existing single coax line by branching derivatives as necessary. This fact often explains why planning is often underestimated by newcomers to FTTH projects.

One of the biggest challenges during network planning is not only designing a network at minimal cost, but also ensuring that such a network satisfies the various local constraints. Obviously working on greenfield or brownfield projects imposes completely different constraints and requirements at the planning phase. In the case of a brand new housing project where FTTH is integrated early on in the design of roads, ducts and access to the houses, the complexity is not the same as when incorporating an FTTH network into existing dwellings, requiring right-of-way and the reuse of existing infrastructure or fibre cables.

Two main types of geo-referenced input data for the target area is required in this stage:

- Demand Point information: this means geographical points representing the subscriber endpoints of the network (can be building entry points, but can also include cabinets, antennas or any other point requiring a fibre connection in the area).
  - The type of subscriber can also be an important consideration: designing for a mixed network (for example combining a PON architecture for residential users with a P2P connection for business users)
  - The number of fibres required to be terminated at each point is an important aspect when correctly planning the network, for example, forecasting the right number of fibres to a multi-dwelling unit
- Route information: relates to the geographical lines that give an indication where cables can be deployed. A variety of possible routes can be considered:
  - New underground routes (requiring trenching). Can cover almost all areas where permission is granted. This can be sourced from general street topology information as most trenches will be located under pavements and traversing streets.



- Existing pipes extracted from geographical infrastructure documentation systems can be used to indicate where ducts, sewers or other existing pipe infrastructure is available for installation of new fibre cables without the need for additional trenching. The available space in these pipes will need to be verified in order to ensure new cables can be added.
- Pole interconnections. These are lines between two poles, indicating where an aerial cable could be installed.
- Façade routes. The cable could also be clamped on the walls of buildings.

### 3.2.1 Where will the POPs be located?

For complex planning areas the planner must decide how many POP locations should be used, where to place the ODFs and active equipment. If several POPs are used, the planners must also decide which subscribers should be served by which POP location.

There is no rule of thumb for how many subscribers can be served by a single POP. Generally, the more served by the POP, the greater the economies of scale in terms of energy, maintenance and aggregation capacity; however, feeder cables will become longer and thus more expensive.

For smaller planning areas, where only one single POP is necessary its location is typically chosen from a pre-defined limited set of options. These are usually dependent on availability to the operator of the buildings in that specific area. Nevertheless, it is often of interest to know the difference in deployment costs between an available location and the ideal location for a POP, as there may be unexplored options, such as basements or garages, if the cost benefit is big enough.

### 3.2.2 Where to install the fibre concentration points?

Among the core tasks of high-level network planning involves deciding on where to place fibre concentration points (FCPs) and which subscriber locations will be connected to which FCP. Also choosing the best fibre-optic management solution to suit each FCP.

These decisions will be subject to constraints imposed by the technical specifications of the available solutions to managing the fibres and the fibre counts of the cables and duct systems.

Nevertheless, the optimal location from a cost perspective may not always be practically possible. However, it is recommended to begin from optimal locations and then to find the nearest practical locations for an FCP as this can result in serious savings in total deployment costs.

### 3.2.3 Which cable routes serve which distribution and feeder areas?

Decisions relating to cable routes, which provide connectivity between POPs, distribution points, and subscriber premises, must be made. However, one of the most business-critical decisions involves the digging and laying out of the cables and ducts both of which are still very expensive-. It is important to maximise the use of existing infrastructure such as empty ducts, to avoid the necessity of digging and their associated costs. Consideration should also be given to mixed scenarios: laying cables in existing ducts where available and combining newly installed ducts and aerial cables where no ducts exist. In such a situation it is important to consider the total cable routing cost in order to make a decision on the optimal route. For example, choosing between a shorter route requiring new trenching and a longer route involving existing duct or aerial cables will depend on the total cost of the trenching, cables, ducts, for both options. Transitions between different options (for example from underground to aerial) should also be considered to ascertain if it is cost-efficient for a short route to transit from underground to aerial and back.



#### 3.2.4 What is the expected bill of materials?

Having made decisions about connectivity, it is time to decide which cable and duct installations should be used on which routes. Together with the equipment requirements (such as closures, splitters, active switches, etc.), this information can be used to generate a high-level bill of materials, and used to provide quantity indication to the hardware suppliers. The final bill of materials – which includes all items in details – is generated during the detailed planning phase.



Figure 8: Result of high-level planning – colour-coded distribution locations and areas

The decisions above have been described as if they are individual decisions, but in practice there is a high degree of interdependency. For instance, deciding which subscribers are to be served by a POP has a direct impact on the number of cables installed in a particular route, and consequently on the question of whether existing ducts have enough capacity to accommodate them or whether digging is required.

Use of an automatic high-level planning tool is highly recommended as this is able to handle all decisions in a single integrated planning and optimization step. In such an environment, the planner is the master making decisions about planning parameters and constraints. The automatic high-level planning tool supports the planner in designing a low-cost network that fulfils all technical constraints and makes optimal use of the existing infrastructure.

# 3.3 Detailed network design

In this stage of the planning process results from high-level planning are converted into "to-build" plans. This involves drawing up a network plan that is accurate and detailed enough to ensure that all official authorisations can be granted and that working instructions can be generated. Additional specification of aspects such as network connectivity (on individual fibre level, duct level, etc.) and labelling should also be included.



### 3.3.1 Detailed Data

All data that has been used in the previous planning stages should be reused in the detailed network planning, for example, geo-referenced data about streets, buildings, addresses with housing units, and other major geographical features, as well as database tables of installable components, purchase and installation costs. Also, the structural decisions made in the high-level planning stage should be used as starting points, including:

- the number and the geographical location of the POPs and FCPs
- the serving areas of each POPs and FCP (as colour-coded in Figure 8)
- the proposed routes including cable and duct installations

Ideally, the software tools should offer appropriate export and import functionality to ease the reuse of the results from high-level network planning. Although much progress has been made in recent years in the area of spatial data interoperability, any process that involves data import and export can lead to a loss of data fidelity. In order to avoid this, some detailed design clients provide pre-integrated interfaces to high level network planning solutions to aid this important step in the process thus avoiding unnecessary data duplication or corruption.

Additionally, it is important to know the exact specification of ducts, cables, fibres and fibre connectors to avoid incompatibility between different components during planning. This includes, for example:

- colour coding of duct and/or micro-ducting systems
- minimum bending radius for ducting and cables
- Network Policy considerations, such as maximum blowing distance or minimum cable specification.
- compatibility constraints for connectors, for example APC connectors cannot mate with a PC connector
- mode-field diameter compatibility for fibre splicing and commissioning; note that this can be fully granted by properly specifying the fibre according to the latest ITU-T G.657 recommendation (edition 3, October 2012), which tackled such compatibility for all categories, including Category B, by restricting the allowed mode-field diameter range.

In addition to the Outside Plant (OSP) detailed data, the plan must also include information necessary to complete the build out or configuration of the Inside Plant (ISP). Some operators will split these into two separate 'jobs' since the resource types and lead times are often very different between OSP and ISP designs - although the use of a single job across both Inside and Outside Plant also occurs. ISP designs tend to focus on the equipment required to provide the service, but consideration is also given to the supporting infrastructure. In the case of Fibre to the Home, the ISP aspects would include the number and physical location of Optical Line Cards, Layer 2 switches and Optical Distribution Frames as well as the physical rack space, power and cooling required in the Central Office building to support any new equipment.

# 3.3.2 Surveys

During the design phase it will be necessary to conduct a survey and verify the feasibility of the network in order to avoid costly changes that might only be discovered during the build phase. There are two types of surveys: desktop survey and field survey.

The desktop survey can be carried out using free tools such as Google Street View or can be based on collected mobile mapping and LiDAR data. It is easy to check important details, such as road surface conditions, tree locations, street types, etc. using a desktop survey.



One of the problems with Google Street View is knowing when this data was gathered and if the data still reflects the current situation. Therefore it is better to use mobile mapping and LiDAR technology as the data provided is up to date, more detailed and provides additional beneficial information.



Figure 9: Desktop Survey using Mobile Mapping and LiDAR data

Field verification of the design is still essential. By taking the initial design out into the field, the designer can now ensure that the resulting design will minimise any subsequent changes during construction. Tablets allow designers to take the design into the field and mark up required changes to the design using sketching tools, notes and photos. They can include information about obstructions and possible health and safety issues quickly and simply.

Once back in the office the designer is able to update the initial design by including real life situations, confident that the final design is now fully optimised for the area and thus require minimal changes during construction. Such an approach has a number of benefits:

- faster design time, as fewer changes are necessary from initial to final design.
- reduction in the number of field visits required, saving time and money.
- reducing unforeseen changes and their related costs during construction as the final design is more accurate.
- faster inventory updates once the design is complete; fewer changes from the final design to the as-built design.

To avoid potential issues with existing infrastructure buried underground, software tools typically support the import or display of 3rd party utility information alongside the proposed design. In some countries, the amount of shared 3rd party information is limited by legislation and often relates only to the presence of the underground network housing, not the type or quantity of cabling in the area.



### 3.3.3 Generating the 'to-build' plans

The detailed network planning phase generates "to-build" plans and must add details and accuracy to the high-level network planning result. It comprises the following tasks:

- detailed drop connection: each drop connection (from the last branching point in the street to a building connection point) must be exactly positioned and traced.
- cable/duct-in-duct configuration: it must be specified which non-direct-buried cable and which inner duct has been blown or pulled into which outer duct, e.g. by specifying the colour and label of a micro-duct system.
- connector placement: for each duct system it must be specified at which geographical position one or more of its ducts (in particular for micro-duct systems) are connected, with what type of connector and to which duct of another duct-system.
- labelling: each component installation receives a unique label according to a consistent, user-defined scheme which enables easy reference and identification for the component in the plan.
- fibre and splicing planning: at ODFs, fibre concentration points and, if conventional cabling is used, at any other cable connection points, it is necessary to define precisely which pairs of fibres are spliced together and in what tray the splice will be located.



Figure 10: Fibre splicing schematic recording fibre colours, allocations and terminations.

The resulting documentation of the "to-build" network comprises accurate and complete information for upgrading, troubleshooting or restoring a network:

- documentation of the "to-build" network
- documentation of POPs including rack space and placement of active and passive equipment
- generation of work instruction plans for complex objects such as an ODF and Optical Splitters
- reporting of overall summaries, material lists, cost lists and fibre blow lists
- generation of the tender list



#### 3.3.4 Job Management

In contrast to many operations that take place in a modern telecommunications network, network construction can take a long time; perhaps months or several years to complete. Usually large network changes are broken down into smaller projects (or jobs) and consequently many PNI vendors have adopted a 'long transaction' or job-based approach to detailed design production. Think about a 'job' being a collection of all the changes required to realise a network modification. Jobs can be small, such as connecting a new building to an existing fibre network or large, for example the construction of a new FTTH serving area.

In the detailed planning phase, it is particularly important that detailed planning tools support both manual changes for individual configurations and automation of mass data operations that are consistent over the complete plan (e.g. equipment naming and labelling). Having this flexibility will improve the quality of the output whilst reducing the labour costs associated with drawing up the detailed design.

# 3.4 Geographic data

For the stages described above, different types of geographic input data will be required. Basic input data is route and demand point information of the target areas.

Regarding route information, a minimal input is the street topology information and is available for most areas. Typical data providers for street topologies are the providers of large geographical information systems (GIS) databases that are also used for car navigation systems. This data is often displayed on mapping and route planning websites such as <u>http://maps.google.com</u>. Alternative local data providers may exist. For some regions, the open source data from OpenStreetMap, <u>www.openstreetmap.org</u> may be a good starting point.



#### Figure 11: Sample image from OpenStreetMap. © OpenStreetMap contributors, CC-BY-SA

Regarding demand points for FTTH or FTTB networks, the location of each building in the area is vital. Purchasing address information from a government agency can be a valid option to consider, as this will generally ensure the correct syntax and the most detailed and up to date information. Later, these addresses can form the main address database for all related departments, including customer care, billing and marketing. Other sources of information for this type of information can include own customer databases (in case of existing service providers), commercial GIS databases (including a broad range of detailed data: however, some may only contain house number ranges



per street segment or conversely may include additional detailed geo-marketing data on an individual address level). In a growing number of regions open source data, such as OpenStreetMap can also be used to extract building locations in a region (as illustrated in the figure above). In many cases, it is also possible to identify buildings based on satellite pictures and establish address points manually using the appropriate GIS tools. This method is also commonly used as a validation method for data obtained from any other source. Missing buildings can easily be added to improve the data quality.

Probably the most difficult data to obtain is information about the type of building and the number of housing units or homes within each building. In early stage planning, this can sometimes be accessed from higher-level information, such as house number ranges or population densities. For more detailed information it may be possible to get this information from the local energy or utility supplier (for example reporting number of registered electricity meters per building). If a suitable information source is not available, the only remaining option is to physically visit every building and count the number of dwellings.

In any case one should be aware that any source of data represents a snapshot in time of the situation and reality has probably evolved since the collation of that data and will evolve further in the future and during the building phase of the network. Consequently, it is generally a wise policy to plan for an excess of spare fibres to anticipate for natural population growth or future housing projects.

Accuracy of the planning results can be enhanced by using additional data, such as:

- availability of existing and reusable infrastructure such as poles (for aerial deployments), or existing ducts with spare capacity. Both contribute to reducing respective deployment costs.
- information about existing gas, electricity, copper infrastructure in the streets can be used to
  determine potential routes and also indicates the likelihood that permission for digging will
  be granted.
- existing fibre infrastructure that is available or can be rented
- suitable locations for a point of presence (POP) or fibre concentration point (FCP).
- other elements such as existing non-crossable obstacles (to avoid evaluating impossible pathways), type of street surface (to better estimate the cost of digging; and to balance one-or two-side digging options).

This additional data may be harder to obtain and consideration should be given to assessing the effort needed to obtain such data, taking into account the objectives of the planning task.

Some detailed information may be left out at the early stage and will have to be approximated. In fact, it is very possible to start planning at a Strategic level with only a set of minimal GIS data: demand points and road network. Nevertheless, since more accurate data will be required in later planning stages, it is generally recommended, for the sake of better strategic and high-level decisions, to gather high-quality data in the early stages as well.

For detailed network design, as much information as possible is needed, it can, therefore be worthwhile spending time checking and "cleaning" the data, for example, using satellite images or field surveys.

Mobile survey tools on tablet or smartphone can be used to validate or enrich acquired input data in the field. A user can walk the streets with a mobile device and add, remove or edit data where required.



Mobile mapping and LiDAR is another way to acquire detailed data. Mobile mapping is the process of collecting geospatial data from a mobile vehicle, typically fitted with a range of photographic, radar, laser, LiDAR or any number of remote sensing systems. Such systems are composed of an integrated array of time synchronized navigation sensors and imaging sensors mounted on a mobile platform. The primary output from such systems include GIS data, digital maps, and geo-referenced images and video. This data provides very valuable information that can be used in the different stages of the planning and design process

Of particular interest to retail operators and only relevant in the strategic modelling stage, is the socalled geo-marketing data. Geo-marketing data refers to any information that allows the planner to gain an indication of the different market potential within the various sub-areas. Such information can include:

- survey results showing willingness of families to sign up for FTTH offers. This information can be gathered with a demand aggregation tool.
- certain types of subscribers in different regions (for example young families with children, elderly people, etc.).
- historical adoption of new (broadband) services in certain regions (for example DSL or digital TV).

All this information can be used to adapt the model to assess the best potential adoption and revenues in each region. When combined with cost information for deploying the network per region, this data supports an optimized cherry-picking strategy.

# 3.5 Software tools

Software tools are key elements for any FTTx projects to support the planning phase of the project as well as subsequent phases. Tools used during the planning activities are the following:

- **Spreadsheet calculation** programmes, such as Microsoft Excel are popular especially in the financial planning phase of the project, but their use is relatively unknown given the versatility of these products. It may appear obvious, but the usage of Excel is a precursor of the emergence of more specialized software product categories as the market matures.
- **GIS general software:** Geographical Information Systems have gained some traction in the last 15 years as a general-purpose environment that makes it possible to visualize and manage objects with spatial properties. Working in the early phases of land planning for network layout is now widely supported by these tools. Desktop programmes, such as ArcGIS, MapInfo or Quantum GIS are the most commonly used software here. In addition, Google systems like Google Earth are also used. Most of the first and second tier operators will have some kind of GIS backend database with several functional purposes: geomarketing, land planning, provisioning etc.
- **CAD tools,** with Autodesk AUTOCAD being the market leader, are part of a very mature category of software tools. They directly support the old manual activity of realising industrial drawings used in many industries and also allow people to literally draw their own plans, as was the case when using a drawing board. As such they are very general-purpose and extremely useful when developing very precise, detailed to-build plans. The vast majority of engineering companies involved in construction phases will incorporate these tools and not necessarily GIS software. The latter are more powerful in manipulating geo-referenced objects but are based on very different principles making their adoption in these companies still at a low level. A noteworthy point is that Autodesk has issued AUTOCAD MAP, which is



a version of AUTOCAD that includes GIS capabilities; this is an attempt to ease adoption and keep client base.

- Network Assets Inventory Management software is a relatively mature category. These tools combine a database for storing structured objects (all objects installed on the field and their environment) with GIS capabilities. They make it possible to manage and geographically visualize these objects. Obviously, when it comes to the operation and maintenance of a network, these tools are of crucial importance. Since these tools are mainly used during operations of the network, a description of such tools is included in Chapter 10 of the Handbook.
- Planning and Design software focuses on the different planning and design stages. They
  are characterized by the integration of design-optimisation and automation capabilities that
  will help planners and designers to better cope with the complexity of the projects and
  consequently improve the quality and time required for this phase of projects. More details
  are provided below.

Planning and design software is an aid to the network planning process and greatly improves efficiency, not only in terms of time (through automation) and the quality of network plans (through dedicated data models), but also in terms of the associated deployment cost of the plans (through intelligent cost optimization algorithms).

Each of the three stages in the network planning process have particular requirements in terms of speed versus complexity that are supported by available software tools.

In the first phase of network planning, the focus is on accurate cost: what is the cost for this whole area, what is the cost for these subareas, etc. Network design tools need to run fast to allow the comparison of different design rules for large areas to identify the most interesting technology and network architecture. Due to the considerable impact of strategic decisions on the business case, the quality of the computations need to be accurate enough as to be capable of drawing valid conclusions.

These tools can help produce very large designs in a very short space of time and in a consistent manner while making it possible to test various scenarios where previous manual methods would be totally impractical.

Figures 12 to 14 show an example of designs generated for large rural territories to evaluate the overall cost of the network while providing sufficient details to highlight realistic pathways as well as roll-out planning in time

Figure 12 shows pre-existing infrastructure that might be reused, Figure 13 exemplifies the possibility to test various scenarios (red to lighter colours give an idea about phasing per year) and Figure 14 gives a zoom on the design.

Obviously doing that kind of exploratory work without design automation tool, would not have been feasible by hand in a short timeframe and at a reasonable cost.





Figure 12: 6 types of existing potentially reusable infrastructure in the territory



Figure 13: Scenarios with different number of POPs





Figure 14: Zoom on previous figure

Often important in the strategic planning is to consider the revenue side of FTTH deployment in the different areas. When combining cost and geomarketing information into the analysis, a tool can potentially also generate heatmaps for ROI across a large area, as illustrated in picture below.



Figure 15: ROI heat map for 25.000 HP based on detailed GIS and geomarketing data



During high-level network planning, the level of detail increases, as does the level of costoptimization. The result of this phase is a network plan and associated detailed costing of material on which all structural decisions are made. In addition, it also provides a plan of how the network should be built. The generated network design needs to be cost optimized. The process of highlevel network planning is typically interactive: the user adds restrictions based on field survey information and the software then calculates a new optimal network design based on these restrictions.

Detailed network planning has fewer requirements around design automation. At this stage the planner must produce the to-build plan in the most efficient way. Therefore the tools must support the handling of very accurate and detailed network specifications and cable layouts. A mix of manual modification functions and limited design-automation capabilities are probably the right setting here.



# 4 Active Equipment

Passive optical network (PON) P2MP and Ethernet P2P solutions have been deployed worldwide. The choice of equipment depends on many variables including demographics and geographical segmentation, specific deployment parameters, financial calculations etc. In particular, the solution chosen is very much dependent on the ease with which passive infrastructure is deployed. It is clear that in today's market both solutions are acceptable.

In a multi-dwelling unit (MDU), the connections between end-users and the building switch can comprise of either copper or fibre, however, fibre is the only alternative that will guarantee to support future bandwidth requirements. In some deployments a second fibre is provided for RF video overlay systems; in other cases multiple fibres (2 to 4 per home) are installed to guarantee competitiveness as well as future applications.



Figure 16: Different FTTH network architectures

# 4.1 Passive optical network

The PON equipment comprises an optical line terminal (OLT) at the point of presence (POP) or central office. One fibre runs to the passive optical splitter and a fan-out connects 64 or 128 end-users with each having an optical network unit (ONU) at the point where the fibre terminates.

The ONU is available in several versions, including an MDU version suitable for multiple subscribers for in-building applications and incorporates existing in-building cabling (CAT5/Ethernet or xDSL)

Advantages of PON includes reduced fibre usage (between POP and splitters), the absence of active equipment between the OLT and ONU, dynamic bandwidth allocation capabilities and the possibility of high bandwidth bursts, which could lead to capital and operational cost savings.

It is important to note that the last part of the network, between the last splitter and the end-user, is the same for a point-to-point or a PON solution: every home passed will be connected with one (or more) fibres up to the point where the last splitter is to be installed, this is also known as a fibre concentration point (FCP) or fibre flexibility point (FFP). One of the differentiators of PON is that the number of fibres between the FFPs and the POP can be reduced significantly (splitting ratio in



combination with the subscriber acceptance rate can result in a 1:100 fibre need reduction). This is especially so in Brownfield areas where some (limited) resources are already available, either dark fibre and/or duct space, which could translate in considerable cost and roll-out time savings.

### 4.1.1 PON solutions

There have been several generations of PON technology to date, as seen in Figure 17.



Figure 17: PON Standards Evolution

The Full Services Access Network (FSAN) Group develops use cases and technical requirements, which are then specified and ratified as standards by the International Telecommunications Union (ITU). These standards include APON, BPON, GPON, XG-PON, XGS-PON and NG-PON2. GPON provides 2.5Gbps of bandwidth downstream and 1.25Gbps upstream shared by a maximum of 1:128. XG- PON offers 10Gbps downstream and 2.5Gbps upstream for up to 128 users. XGS-PON provides symmetric 10Gbps downstream and upstream bandwidth with a maximum splitting ratio of 1:128.

NGPON2 selected TWDMPON (time wavelength division multiplexing passive optical networking) as the primary technology solution with Point To Point WDM overlay channels and with full co-existence with legacy ITU-T PONs (G-PON, XG-PON1, XGS-PON) and RF video. It is possible to use 4 or 8 wavelengths, 40G or 80G Downstream and 10G, 40G or 80G Upstream. In addition, up to 8 channels of point-to-point WDM with line rates of 1G, 2.5G and 10G can be used.




#### Figure 18: NG-PON2 diagram

Standardization of NG-PON2 is evolving rapidly in the ITU-T (considering the additional complexities involved). G.989.1 contains the general requirements for the NG-PON2 (it was already approved and published). G.989.2 specifies parameters for the physical layer Wavelength plans, Optical loss budgets, Line rates, Modulation format, Wavelength channel parameters (spectral excursion, Tx SNR, etc), ONU tuning time classes.

G.989.3 specifies transmission convergence (TC) layer protocols for NG-PON2. G.989 contains the common definitions, acronyms, abbreviations, and conventions of the G.989 series of Recommendations. G.988 Generic OMCI, contains the Management and Control Interface specifications adaptation for TWDM-PON.



Figure 19: NG-PON2 Standardization



In 2004 the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE) introduced an alternative standard called EPON with a capability of 1Gbps in both directions. Proprietary EPON products are also available with 2Gbit/s downstream bit rate.

In September 2009 the IEEE ratified a new standard, 10G-EPON, offering 10Gbps symmetric bit rate with two variations:

- 10G EPON symmetrical supporting 10G downstream and upstream. The main driver for 10/10Gps-EPON is the necessity to provide adequate downstream and upstream bandwidth to support the MDU's. When deployment strategy is MDU configuration, one 10GEPON ONU may be connected up to thousands of subscribers.
- 10G EPON asymmetrical supporting 10G downstream and 1G upstream. The upstream transmission is identical to that of the existing EPON (as specified in IEEE 802.3ah), and will rely on field-proven and mass deployed burst-mode optical transceivers. The downstream transmission, which uses continuous-mode optics, will rely on the maturity of 10Gbps p2p Ethernet devices.

Trends for access technology over the next ten years will be towards more symmetrical bandwidth. Multimedia file sharing, peer-to-peer applications and growth in data-intensive applications used by home-workers will drive subscribers towards upstream bandwidth. Besides these, the main drivers behind the intensive usage of PON technologies will be Business Service, Mobile and Wi-Fi / Small cells backhaul networks that operators need to support beyond the residential services. Business services or mobile backhaul will require sustained and symmetric 1 Gb/s data rates. However, it is difficult to envision complete symmetry in residential applications due to the enormous amount of bandwidth required for HDTV and entertainment services in general – although small businesses could benefit from symmetric, broadband connectivity. Nonetheless, it is the high upstream bit rate of the PON that offers FTTH operators key competitive advantages over DSL or cable providers. GPON provides a 20 km reach with a 28dB optical budget using class B+ optics with a split ratio of 1:128. The reach can be extended to 30 km by limiting the splitting factor to a maximum of 1:16, or by introducing C+ optics, which add up to 4 dB to the optical link budget and can increase the optical reach to 60 km, by using reach extenders. 10G-EPON can also provide a 20 km reach with a 29dB optical budget.



Figure 20: Schematic diagram of a GPON network

As an option, an RF video overlay can be added through the use of an additional wavelength (1550 nm) which is compatible with a step-by-step build-up or time-to-market critical situations for digital TV applications.



The standards have been defined to allow GPON, XG-PON or XGS-PON, and NG-PON2 to coexist on the same fibre by using a different wavelength for each solution. This is acceptable as long as requirements such as the G.984.5 recommendation, which refined the spectrum plan for GPON and defined the blocking filters in the GPON optical network units (ONUs), prevent crosstalk from non-GPON wavelengths.



Figure 21: ITU-T G.987 wavelength plan



#### Figure 22: Coexistence of different FTTH technologies

Coexistence is ensured by a passive element known as Coexistence Element (CE). This combines/splits wavelengths associated to each service and PON technology.

It is also expected that NG-PON2 devices will support Mobile Backhaul (MBH) timing applications (1588 BC and TC clocks to support accurate frequency and phase time requirements).



## 4.1.2 PON active equipment

Standard PON active equipment consists of an optical line terminal (OLT) and an optical network unit (ONU).

The OLT is usually situated at the point-of-presence (POP) or concentration point.

The OLT boards can handle up to 16,384 subscribers (based on 64 users per GPON connection) per shelf. OLT boards can also provide up to 768 point-to-point connections (Active Ethernet) for applications or clients that require such a dedicated channel.

OLTs provide redundancy at the aggregated switch, power unit and uplink ports for improved reliability.

Some OLTs can also offer ring protection mechanisms for their uplink ports with ERPS (ITU-T G.8032 Ethernet Ring Protection Switching) functionalities as well as capacity to MUX the RF Overlay internally (and incorporate the EDFA amplifiers) making it an integrated solution for operators.

OLTs can be installed with GPON, XG-PON, XGS-PON or NG-PON2 cards making them the perfect choice for a pay-as-you-grow scenario, meaning that the investment in the chassis will last as the new PON technologies and line cards become available. A Coexistence Element (CE) can also be integrated in the chassis to ease the upgrade towards NG-PON2.



Figure 23: Different types of ONT

There are a number of different types of ONUs available to suit various locations:

- indoor applications
- outdoor applications
- business applications
- MDU applications

Depending on the application, the ONU can provide analogue phone connections (POTS), Ethernet connections, RF connections for video overlay and, in the case of FTTB, a number of VDSL2 or Ethernet connections, Wi-Fi 2.4/5 GHz and G.hn (G.9960).



MDU (Multi dwelling ONUs) can be an intermediate solution for the full end to end fibre architecture, for buildings with existing copper networks. As VDSL2 links can now achieve 100Mbps full-duplex (Annex 30a), this provides access to more subscribers without actually having to take the fibre inside their homes. Furthermore, this type of ONU can be used to replace legacy exchange telephone systems, namely in remote areas. As fibre becomes available in those areas, it makes sense to migrate all old telephone lines into ONUs (with a high number of POT ports) thus converting them to VOIP and thereby reducing OPEX and CAPEX. Enhancements such as vectoring, bonding and G fast (G.9970) can further improve the offered bandwidth.



#### Figure 24: FTTH Applications

In the IEEE world, the subscriber equipment is always referred to as the ONU, however, in the context of GPON, XG-PON and XGS-PON it was agreed that the term ONU should be used in general; ONT was kept only to describe an ONU supporting a single subscriber. Therefore, the term ONU is more general and always appropriate.

This definition is not always adhered to by all and in other (non-PON) cases; any device that terminates the optical network is also referred to as an optical network termination (ONT). In this document no preference is expressed and both terminologies are used and as such should be interpreted in their broadest sense.

## 4.1.3 FTTdp – Ultra Broadband

Operators often face problems addressing the last few meters of the access:

- Trenching on premises
- Installation scheduling and cost
- Right of Way issues
- Roll-out delays due to capacity of installers





At the same time, operators are finding themselves in highly competitive environments where competitors are making service claims of up to 1 Gbps to the subscriber. This means operators need to quickly increase capacities in order to keep pace and maintain market share.

It is well known that the popularity of IPTV and video on demand is driving requirements for higher bandwidth for residential and small and medium-size businesses.

Now, more than ever before, operators have the opportunity to reuse their existing copper assets to meet the growing demands for ultra-broadband services from their subscribers.

With new technologies such as VDSL2 (profile 17a, 30a and 35b) and G.fast, operators can now effectively reach speeds of 100, 300, or up to 1Gbps.

The implications for technology selection - either FTTH or FTTx - represent a key decision that operators with existing copper infrastructure must make.

G fast allows for fibre performance at the cost of a simple DSL installation. It fosters OPEX / CAPEX savings by:

- delivering data at fibre speed to the subscribers using telephony copper wires
- allowing for subscriber self-installation (like ADSL)
- negating costs related to bringing the fibre infrastructure inside the subscriber's house.
- enabling the DPU to be powered from the subscriber side (Reverse Power Feeding)



On the other hand G.fast boosts performance by:

- providing up to 150Mbps 1Gbps using copper loops of up to 500 meters
- offering powerful vectoring, responsive to dynamic line conditions
- facilitating speedy retraining (a matter of seconds!)

G fast (ITU-T G.9701/2) as opposed to other forms of DSL uses TDD, with a flexible DS/US ration. Furthermore, it's powerful vectoring mechanism as well as low Power Spectral density allows for a very reliable technology to address the last few hundred meters. G fast uses the spectrum almost to the 212 MHz squeezing every bit out of the available spectrum.

Traditional DSLAMs were designed for installation in the central office or in service provider owned cabinets that have access to power. However, DPUs do not.



As they need to be in close proximity to subscriber premises, DPUs are installed in a variety of non-traditional locations:

- attached to external walls of buildings
- in the basement of apartment buildings or at the level of the apartment floor
- on telephone poles
- under manhole covers
- in pedestals

However, in many of these locations, access to power is difficult and/or expensive.





Reverse power feeding (RPF) addresses this difficulty. RPF draws power from subscriber premises over the same copper pair used for data service.

The benefits of RPF are:

- flexibility
- AC source proximity or location safe for AC not necessary
- alternative to batteries at the DPU
- installation by electrical company not necessary
- cost advantage in low port count MDUs
- costs relating to Smart Meter Installation avoided
- OPEX reduction maintaining aging copper wires
- PON Budget optimization (eliminating optical splitters and extending optical cable reach)
- Standardized by ETSI
- interoperability, Safe

### 4.1.4 Bandwidth management

GPON, EPON, XG-PON, XGS-PON and 10G-EPON bandwidth is allocated by TDM (time division multiplexing) based schemes. Downstream, all data is transmitted to all ONUs; incoming data is then filtered based on port ID. In the upstream direction, the OLT controls the upstream channel by assigning a different time slot to each ONU. The OLT provides dynamic bandwidth allocation and prioritization between services using a MAC (Media Access Control) protocol.



Figure 25: Bandwidth management in PON systems



### 4.1.5 Wavelength management

A set of wavelengths has been defined by ITU-T to ensure the co-existence of different PON technologies over the same fibre, via WDM.

These specifications also define the wavelength-blocking characteristics for filters that protect the GPON downstream signal in the ONU from interference from new bands.

However, there is a need for some additional aspects to be defined concerning management and control methods of the multiple wavelengths in the system. These aspects are being developed in an ITU-T Recommendation G multi.

# 4.2 PON deployment optimization

When deploying PON networks, active and passive infrastructures work together. It is clear that timely investment in active equipment (mainly associated with the network side) can be optimized once the correct passive splitting arrangement has been chosen.

Several considerations need to be taken into account when designing the network:

- optimal use of active equipment assuring an (average) usage rate per PON port exceeding 50%
- flexible outside plant that easily adapts to present and future subscriber distributions
- regulatory requirements for unbundled next-generation access (NGA) networks
- optimizing operational costs due to field interventions

These considerations will result in a number of design rules.

To make use of the inherent fibre usage advantage of PON, the location of the splitters should be optimized. In typical European city areas, the optimal node size will be somewhere between 500 and 2,000 homes passed.

Assuming that single-level splitting, also known as centralized splitting, is employed, the size of the node should be defined, meaning the number of homes passed, where the splitters will be installed. There is a trade-off between the cost of the cabinets and the need for extra fibre if cabinets are moved higher in the network and closer to the POP. One of the critical factors in this optimization process involves the area density; typically cost will vary with node size as follows:





Figure 26: Optimization of node side in a PON with single-level splitting

Cities comprise of many MDU's, some contain a few apartments and others many hundreds. This is also an important factor when designing a network, such as how many splitters need to be installed in the basement of the buildings. Some networks employ a two-level splitting strategy, also known as distributed splitting where, for instance, 1:8 splitters are located in the buildings and a second 1:8 splitter is installed at node level. In areas where there is a combination of MDUs and SFU's (single family dwellings), the optimal node size may increase (one fibre coming from a building now represents up to eight homes passed). In some cases, even higher levels of splitting, also known as multi-level splitting can be deployed.



Figure 27: Centralized and distributed splitting in a PON



To enable infrastructure sharing in a technology agnostic way through fibre unbundling, the splitter sites closest to the end-users must be a fibre flexibility point (FFP) thus ensuring that every service provider will have the best possible access to the fibre of each subscriber.

In the case of a multi-fibre per home deployment, some of the fibres may be dedicated to a service provider and, therefore, not be available for unbundling (the dedicated fibres may be spliced/hard-wired rather than connected).

When a point-to-point outside plant is deployed at the POP level, a PON service provider will install all his splitters in the POP. This will result in a reduction in feeder fibre usage in the outside plant. An additional drawback could be the location of the POP which might be closer to the end-user (fewer homes passed) since every home will have one (or more) fibres connected into the POP. The PON service provider might even decide to aggregate a number of the point-to-point POP and only install his active equipment (OLTs) in one of these POPs and convert the others to passive (splitter) POPs.

# 4.3 Ethernet point-to-point

For Ethernet architectures, there are two options available, one involving a dedicated fibre per subscriber between the Ethernet switch located at the POP and the home; or one fibre to an aggregation point and a dedicated fibre from there onwards. Implementing the first option is simple and straightforward whilst the second limits the fibre usage in the access loop and, more often than not is used in FTTB solutions.

## 4.3.1 Ethernet point-to-point solutions

From a civil engineering perspective, the topologies of the cable plant for point-to-point fibre deployments can appear identical to those for PON. However, the number of fibres/cables between the POP and the FFP will be significantly fewer for a PON deployment.

From the POP, individual subscriber feeder fibres are connected to a distribution point in the field. This is often a fibre flexibility point which is either located in an underground enclosure or in a street cabinet. From this distribution point, fibres are then connected to the homes.

Large numbers of feeder fibres do not pose any major obstacle from a civil engineering perspective. However, since the fibre densities in the feeder and drop are very different, it is likely that a variety of cabling techniques will be employed in the two parts of the network.

Deployment can be facilitated by existing ducts, as well as through other right-of-way systems such as sewers or tunnels.

Fibres entering the POP are terminated on an optical distribution frame (ODF) which is a flexible fibre management solution allowing subscribers to be connected to any port on the switches in the POP.

To cope with the large number of fibres in the POP and the reduced space, the density of the fibres need to be very high. There are already examples of a high-density ODF on the market that can terminate and connect more than 2,300 fibres in a single rack. Acceptance rates in FTTH projects need time to ramp up and usually stay below 100%. Fibre management allows a ramp up of the number of active ports in synchrony with the activation of subscribers. This minimizes the number of unused active network elements in the POP.





Figure 28: Ethernet network diagram

## 4.3.2 Transmission technologies

Recognizing the need for Ethernet in access networks, an IEEE 802.3ah Ethernet in the First Mile (EFM) Working Group was established in 2001. As well as developing standards for Ethernet over copper and EPON, the Group created two standards for Fast Ethernet and Gigabit Ethernet over single mode fibre.

The EFM standard was approved and published in 2004 and included in the basic IEEE 802.3 standard in 2005.

The specifications for transmission over single mode fibre are called 100Base-BX10 for Fast Ethernet and 1000Base-BX10 for Gigabit Ethernet. Both specifications are defined for a nominal maximum reach of 10km.

To separate the directions on the same fibre, wavelength-division duplexing is employed. For each of the bit-rate classes, two specifications for transceivers are defined; one for upstream (from the subscriber towards the POP) and one for downstream (from the POP towards the subscriber). The table provides the fundamental optical parameters for these specifications:

|                                   | 100Base-<br>BX10-D | 100Base-<br>BX10-U | 1000Base-<br>BX10-D | 1000Base-<br>BX10-U |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Transmit direction                | Downstream         | Upstream           | Downstream          | Upstream            |
| Nominal transmit wavelength       | 1550nm             | 1310nm             | 1490nm              | 1310nm              |
| Minimum range                     | 0,5m to 10km       |                    |                     |                     |
| Minimum channel<br>insertion loss | 5.5dB              | 6.0dB              | 5.5dB               | 6.0dB               |



To cope with unusual situations, the market offers optical transceivers with non-standard characteristics and some are capable of, for example, bridging significantly longer distances making them suitable for deployment in rural areas.

As the nominal transmit wavelength of 100BASE-BX-D (1550nm) is the same as the standard wavelength for video overlays in PON systems, transceivers exist which can transmit at 1490nm. This makes it possible to use off-the-shelf video transmission equipment to insert an additional signal at 1550nm in order to carry the RF video overlay signal on the same fibre.

For highest reach and power, 1000-BX20, -BX40 or –BX60 are already available on the market. 10GE interfaces are also becoming available.

When taking these P2MP and P2P access network approaches, it makes sense to allow for the insertion, on the same OLT chassis line cards, of GPON, XG-PON and NG-PON2, as well as Ethernet P2P and 10G Ethernet P2P. This will provide service providers with all the flexibility to address their subscribers' needs while consolidating the Central Office.

## 4.3.3 RF-based video solutions

The features of IP-based video solutions are superior to that of simple broadcast solutions and have, therefore, become an indispensable part of any triple-play offering. Frequently, RF video broadcast overlays are needed to support existing TV receivers in subscriber households. PON architectures usually achieve this by providing an RF video signal, compatible with cable TV solutions, over an additional wavelength at 1550nm. Point-to-point fibre installations offer two different approaches, depending on the individual fibre installation.

The first approach involves an additional fibre per subscriber that is deployed in a tree structure and carries an RF video signal which is fed into the in-house coaxial distribution network. With this option, the split factors (e.g.  $\geq$  128) exceed those typically used for PONs thus minimizing the number of additional feeder fibres..

In the second approach a video signal is inserted into every pointto-point fibre at 1550nm. The RF video signal carried by a dedicated wavelength from a video-OLT is first split into multiple identical streams by an optical splitter and then fed into each pointto-point fibre by means of triplexers. The wavelengths are separated at the subscriber end and the 1550nm signal converted into an RF signal for coax distribution, with the 1490nm signal being operational on an Ethernet port.

In both cases the CPE/ONU devices comprise two distinct parts:

- a media converter that takes the RF signal on 1550nm and converts it into an electrical signal that drives a coax interface
- an optical Ethernet interface into an Ethernet switch or router

In the case of the single-fibre the signals are separated by a triplexer built into the CPE, while with the dual fibre case there are individual optical interfaces already in place for each fibre.







Figure 30: Insertion of RF video signal into point-topoint fibres.



New technological approaches are becoming available to improve the reach and quality of the RF Overlay signal. These include incorporating the RF Overlay amplifiers and wdm muxes inside the OLT chassis, thus reducing power losses and CAPEX with the result that the whole system can be integrated under the same Network Management System.

# 4.4 Subscriber equipment

In the early days of broadband, home internet connectivity was delivered to PCs through simple, low cost data modems. This was followed by routers and wireless connectivity (Wi-Fi). Today, the proliferation of digital devices inside the home, including but not limited to computers, digital cameras, DVD players, game consoles and PDA, places higher demands on home-user equipment. The "digital home" has arrived.

There are two distinct options available in the home environment: the optical network termination (ONT), where the fibre is terminated; and the subscriber premise equipment (CPE) providing the necessary networking and service support. These options may be integrated or separated, depending on the demarcation point between service provider and end-user.



Figure 31: Possible configurations of the ONT and CPE

With the creation of more advanced technologies and devices, the concept of the residential gateway (RG) has emerged. CPE combines a broad range of networking capabilities including options and services, such as optical network termination, routing, wireless LAN (Wi-Fi), Network Address Translation (NAT) as well as security and firewall. These technologies are also capable of incorporating the necessary features needed to support VoIP and IPTV services, USB connectivity for shared printers, telemetry dongles, storage media centres and quality of service requirements. Some ONTs also provide interfaces suitable for home networking over power lines, phone lines and coaxial cables.

For deployment of the CPEs the service providers can choose from two scenarios:

• CPE as demarcation with the subscriber. CPE becomes an integral part of the service provider's product range, terminating at the incoming line and delivering services to the subscriber. The service provider owns and maintains the CPE thus controlling the end-toend service delivery, which includes the termination (ONT), and integrity of the transmission as well as delivery of service. The subscriber connects his home network and devices directly to the subscriber-facing interfaces of the CPE.



• Network Interface as a demarcation line between the subscriber and the service provider. The ONT is provided by the service provider and the ONT's Ethernet port(s) is the demarcation line with the subscriber connecting his home network or service-specific devices (voice adapter, video set-top box, etc.) to the ONT.

A common situation where this scenario is utilized is the open access network involving different service providers for connectivity and services. The connectivity provider is responsible for the access and optical line termination, but not for service delivery/termination like voice (telephony) or video. The service-specific CPEs are provided by the respective service providers. Devices can either be drop-shipped to the subscribers for self-installation or distributed through retail channels.

To help address concerns related to home and device management, the Broadband Forum (previously the DSL Forum) established the TR-069 management interface standard, which is now available on most modern residential gateways.

A standardized, open home connectivity enables a new competitive landscape in which network operators, internet service providers, IT-vendors, and consumer electronics vendors to compete for the greatest subscriber share.

# 4.5 Softwarized and Virtualized Network Solutions

Software defined networking (SDN) and network functions virtualization (NFV) are two promising concepts that could dramatically change the equation for service providers. The intersection of telecommunications, Internet and IT paradigms combined with advances in hardware and software technologies will create an environment of rapid innovation and disruption. It will result in an ecosystem of flexible networks and virtualized applications dynamically adapted to the needs of both services and subscribers.

SDN and NFV in conjunction with next-generation fibre deployments (fibre to the home and building, FTTH/B) will be key enablers for this access network evolution, as these will contribute to lowering the network's total cost of ownership, accelerating new service innovation, and maximizing customer satisfaction. In addition, this approach will allow service providers to shift critical functions to the cloud and make it easier for them to manage networks containing equipment from multiple vendors, while efficiently scaling their networks from small to large access nodes.

The key principle of SDN is a separation of the control plane and the data plane within a network system. This is not a new principle, as many historical technologies employed similar approaches, but at a much smaller scale. One of the major goals of SDN is to move away from proprietary network programming implementations towards open, extensible and standardized environments, which are vendor neutral and use open interfaces and common data models.





Figure 32: The simplified SDN model (Reference: Open Networking Foundation)

NFV has its origins in the data centre world where solutions permitted traditional single-purpose hardware servers to be segmented into multiple logical or virtual servers. Increasing compute resources and falling compute costs support this concept: many network applications traditionally mandated by specialized hardware can instead run on x86 hardware platforms.





**Use Case "vOLT and vCPE in FTTH**": Recent announcements from the industry have seen the introduction of virtual optical line terminals (vOLT) as well as virtual customer premises equipment and subscriber gateways (vCPE and vSG, respectively). All of the complex software-based functions that traditionally were deeply integrated within an OLT hardware platform are refined so they can operate in a standard x86 environment as a VNF. The capabilities remaining within the OLT



hardware can be reduced to an OpenFlow Ethernet switch that can perform media conversion between the respective flavours of PON and high-speed Ethernet uplinks. As part of the media conversion, the OLT takes the management messages destined for the optical networking unit (ONU) and translates them into more traditional ONU management and control interface (OMCI) messages.

**Use Case "Disaggregated OLT**": A popular concept among leading operators is the disaggregation of the OLT system. In this approach the traditional monolithic DSLAM is separated into multiple devices:

- a switch fabric for the central switching comprised of one or multiple high-performance switches as they are installed in data centres,
- OLT-devices for the respective PON-technology, and
- a server-system for the virtualized functions.

These concepts are being refined in the BBF Cloud CO working group and by leading open source reference designs like CORD (Central Office re-architected as a Datacenter), maintained by the Open Networking Foundation (ONF). The idea is to construct open, modular OLT systems that integrate natively with open source, multi-vendor SDN platforms and connect directly to large-scale fabric switches to improve scale, reduce cost and enhance multi-vendor interoperability. Modular systems are easier to upgrade as technology improvements occur over time. In addition, a modular, Linux-based software architecture allows key software functions, e.g., the OMCI stack, to be decoupled from the hardware to improve scale and interoperability; thus allowing these functions to be deployed locally or in a higher-scale cloud environment. It also eases the integration of 3rd party networking applications.

**Use Case "G Fast with Virtualization**": The industry has also sought to develop and implement SDN capabilities in G fast scenarios. FTTB is endorsed as a deployment model for G fast enabling the number of micro-nodes deployed to increase exponentially, resulting in a similar increase in the number of active network elements that must be managed within the network. To address this management challenge in the context of SDN, the industry has developed G fast DPUs or micro-DSLAMs using the same NETCONF protocols and YANG-based data models. The concept of a Persistent Management Agent Aggregator (PMAA) has been introduced to shield the operator's OSS from the exponential increase in the number of active network elements. The Broadband Forum Working Text WT-358 describes how the PMAA can be deployed in cloud based x86 server infrastructures, abstracting this control plane element from the network hardware.

**Use Case "Hybrid Fiber Coax and vCCAP**": Cable operators have been offering IP video services and converting the legacy video channels to DOCSIS (Data Over Cable Service Interface Specification). The typical access networks are hybrid networks with fibre in the feeder and coaxial cable for the distribution network. SDN and NFV can support the evolution to handle increased bandwidth demands and support the network transformation to all-IP. Access Platform (vCCAP) saves space and power compared to purpose built CCAP hardware. The vCCAP architecture addresses the capacity needs of residential and enterprise customers, and is a stepping stone to FTTH/B and next-generation access technologies.

Network virtualization is a success factor of future communications infrastructure. It will enable network operators to provide services flexibly and cost-effectively across their fixed and mobile networks. As the target of the fixed access network architecture, FTTH/B networks will also benefit from the softwarization and virtualization technologies (SDN/NFV). However, research and development into use cases for SDN and NFV are still ongoing.



# 5 Infrastructure Sharing

The installation of new FTTH networks may require high cost civil works for the deployment of new cabling in outside plants, in MDUs, and inside the home. These high costs can inhibit the deployment of FTTH and, in a competitive environment, if the same costs must be borne by each competing operator, competition will be hindered and inefficient investments made. Regulators are looking at ways to encourage new FTTH deployments and to meet national targets. One remedy to this situation is the effective sharing of infrastructure costs by multiple competing operators. It may even provide the opportunity for non-telecom players to participate in FTTH build outs, for example, utilities, municipalities, as well as real estate developers. However, cooperation among competitors may need to be facilitated or mandated by regulatory authorities.

Besides infrastructure sharing within the FTTH networks, mobile networks require an increasing number of fibre cables (dark fibre) as backhaul to connect base stations, e.g. 3G, 4G or beyond. As a technology evolution, 5G is being developed to support the Gigabit society, which would require more than 50%\* additional investment for fibre front and backhaul. (\*Citi Bank report - 5G The Road to the Next evolution – 1 September 2017).

Network sharing will undoubtedly play a key role for fixed and mobile networks in the near future as 5G technology largely depends upon rollout of small cells in high traffic scenarios, involving greatly increased data rates per site. Thus mobile operators will need to find new methods to rapidly increase their limited available fibre capacity to reach sites traditionally covered by access providers. Likewise, the distribution mix of fibre cables used in access networks will have to cater for these new capacity requirements. Unbundling methods and co-sharing of access nodes (fibre cable distribution in ducts and manholes, outdoor cabinets and closures) will become dominant discussion points in rollout scenarios. In many situations today, especially dense inner city areas most affected by changes, the capacity of the outside plant for access networks is already strained due to site building restrictions (lack of space, lack of capacity for extra cables, lack of site permits etc.)

# 5.1 Sharing options at various layers.

FTTH infrastructure may be shared or "unbundled" at various layers for either point-to-point (PTP) fibre or point-to-multipoint passive optical network (PON) architectures. These layers are classified in Figure 34 from the lowest layer of sharing up to the highest and described below.





### Figure 34: Classification of infrastructure sharing for PTP Fibre and PON FTTH.

1. **Active or "bitstream" unbundling** (includes VULA) – in this scenario, the wholesale operator provides transport from the subscribers' premises back to a point of interconnect (PoI), where retail service providers can connect at L2 (Ethernet) or L3 (IP). The wholesaler operates and maintains both the active FTTH infrastructure, including the OLT and ONU, and the entire passive infrastructure in between. An example is NBNCo's GPON network in Australia. In Europe, BT Openreach operates a wholesale VDSL2 network on this principle.

Bitstream Pol's can be the network ports on a PON OLT, or can be further back in the network on a L2 or L3 switch.

Bitstream unbundling might also be realized using SDN network virtualization or "slicing", in which a single physical network is partitioned into multiple virtual network "slices", each of which can be independently controlled by a Virtual Network Operator (VNO). In this way, multiple VNOs can share a common FTTH network. A network hypervisor would provide resource isolation between the VNOs while allowing each VNO to control their slice of the network.

In the following passive unbundling scenarios, each service provider is responsible for providing their own active equipment: their own OLT and ONU.

2. **Wavelength** ( $\lambda$ ) unbundling – in this scenario, competing operators share the same fibre, but maintain separate connectivity by using separate transmission wavelengths, i.e. wavelength division multiplexing (WDM). Wavelength unbundling can be further divided into one wavelength per operator or per subscriber.

a. One λ per operator. On a PON network, this could be achieved by wavelength stacking of individual operators' logical TDM PON signals, using TWDM PON technology. Each competing operator is assigned a single port (corresponding to a pair of unique downstream and upstream wavelengths) on a PoI, which in this case is a DWDM mux/demux, which may be either passive or have optical amplification.



b. One λ per subscriber. Alternatively, each subscriber on the PON network could be assigned a unique wavelength pair, using WDM PON technology. Access to the individual subscriber is provided by a passive PoI DWDM mux/demux, each port corresponding to an individual subscriber. Operators will have a physical connection to the PoI for every subscriber they serve. In general, the more wavelengths the more expensive the equipment costs.

In principle, one  $\lambda$  per subscriber unbundling could also be done on PTP architecture.

3. **Fibre unbundling** – in this scenario, multiple competing operators cooperate to share the cost of the deployment of new cables to provide fibre connectivity to homes, and/or to share an existing cable. Each cable contains multiple fibres, and by agreement, each operator is allocated exclusive use of one or more of those fibres—a kind of space division multiplexing. Fibre unbundling can be further divided into multi-fibre and mono-fibre unbundling.

- a. Multi-fibre. A dedicated fibre from each competing operator's OLT accesses each home. For example, to support 4 competing operators, each home will be connected with 4 fibres. In a PTP architecture, the operators connect their OLTs directly to the dedicated fibres allocated to them. In the PON architecture, all the competing operators provide their own PON splitter, co-locating them in a common location (e.g. an outside cabinet, or an MDU basement). In addition, operators provide their own feeder fibre connecting the OLT to the splitter. Therefore, each operator has their own dedicated end-to-end FTTH network, but shares the civil works cost and the cable sheath. Some municipalities in Switzerland provide an example of this practice.
- b. Mono-fibre. There is a single fibre connection, shared by all competing operators, to every home. Connectivity to the fibres is provided at a Pol by a fibre cross-connect, typically a passive, manual connectorized fibre distribution panel. The Pol cross-connect gives access to each home to one, and only one, operator. When a subscriber changes operator, the connection to the old operator is replaced with a connection to the new operator. In the PTP architecture, competing operators' OLTs are connected to the Pol; for PON, the PON splitter ports are connected to a Pol at the splitter location. Competing operators in France, Spain and Portugal have begun using this practice.
- c. A special case of fibre unbundling is the sharing of in-building wiring in multi-dwelling unit buildings (MDUs). Fibre unbundling is extended from outside to inside the building. In the case of PON, optical splitters may be placed in the MDU basement. The vertical and horizontal cabling from the splitter to each unit can be either multi-fibre or mono-fibre. Different operational models of sharing can apply. For example, in France, the first operator canvasses competing operators to see if they want a fibre installed. The first operator then deploys a multi-fibre architecture and bills the competing operators at cost. In Spain, the first operator can deploy mono- or multi-fibre. Competing operators can then ask for access to that infrastructure. The first operator is required to oblige but can charge for this.

4. **Sharing of ducts, poles, etc.** – in this scenario, competing operators provide their own cables, but the deployment costs of the cable are minimized because access to ducts, poles, rightsof-way etc. are made equally available to them. Examples of entities providing such access are the incumbent operator, utilities, and municipalities. This is not an unbundling activity per se.



# 5.2 Comparison of unbundling strategies

### 1. CAPEX –

- Bitstream unbundling eliminates the duplication of per-operator active and passive infrastructures, and in general will require the least CAPEX.
- Of the fibre unbundling scenarios, mono-fibre requires fewer fibres than multi-fibre, and the PTP architecture will always require less CAPEX. The same is true for PON architectures, as long as the per-home-passed cost of the Pol cross-connect is less than the cost of the additional fibres connecting each home.
- Wavelength unbundling architectures, like bitstream unbundling, minimize the amount of fibre. On the other hand, like fibre unbundling, operators must provide their own OLT. The major CAPEX factor however is the relatively high cost for the DWDM mux/demux (compared to a passive cross-connect) and DWDM-compatible optics in the OLT and in the ONU. Some WDM PON or TWDM PON implementations require tuneable transmitters and/or receivers in the ONU. Some WDM PON implementations require a DWDM wavelength multiplexer/demultiplexer to "route" wavelengths to/from ONUs in place of the PON power splitter. For the near future at least, the CAPEX of wavelength unbundling strategies will be problematic. However, efforts are underway to reduce the cost of TWDM PON optics that might enable this option in the longer term.
- PON vs. PTP. There is vast literature on this topic. The main points to consider when unbundling CAPEX are (1) PTP architectures require more fibres than PONs in the feeder section, and (2) large per-subscriber Pol cross-connects, analogous to copper MDFs, are required.

To summarize the CAPEX comparison in the infrastructure-sharing scenario, PON bitstream unbundling and PON mono-fibre unbundling will generally require the least CAPEX. PTP bitstream and PTP mono-fibre unbundling can be CAPEX-effective for short feeder lengths (or for remote OLTs in "active Ethernet" architectures). PON multi-fibre unbundling can be CAPEX-effective for short distribution lengths (e.g. when the splitter is placed in an MDU basement).

**2. OPEX** – there are many factors contributing to OPEX, but probably the most important operation in the context of unbundling is the manual reconfiguration of physical connections at the Pol during churn. This operation is required for PTP architectures, WDM PON, and PON mono-fibre unbundling. It has the largest impact when a truck roll is required to a remote Pol, as with PON mono-fibre and PTP architectures with remote OLTs. Bitstream, PON multi-fibre, and TWDM PON architectures do not require this operation.

**3. Flexibility** – there are a number of attributes pertaining to unbundling that fall into this category. The most important are:

- Ability to support more than one service provider per subscriber: readily supported by bitstream and multi-fibre unbundling architectures.
- Ability to support a large number of competing service providers: multi-fibre architectures are limited by the number of fibres deployed per home, while TWDM PON is limited by the number of wavelength pairs supported (starting at 4 but which may increase in the future).



 Low start-up cost barrier for new entrants. In the PON multi-fibre and PON wavelength unbundling architectures, all homes passed are connected, even those of non-paying subscribers. For new entrants, starting with low take rates, this leads to low OLT port utilization, since most homes connected to each new entrant's PON OLT ports are taking service from other providers. This represents a higher cost per subscriber compared to more established operators with higher take rates, and may represent a higher barrier to entry. On the other hand, PTP and PON mono-fibre architectures allow for grooming of subscribers to fewer OLT ports, minimizing this effect. Bitstream architectures pose an even lower barrier, not even requiring the start-up cost of an OLT.

# 5.3 Regulation.

Directive 2014/61/CE on broadband cost reduction is an initiative by the European Commission to introduce a minimum set of conditions for infrastructure sharing across Europe. At high level the initiative has 4 main elements, or "pillars", which deal with access to existing infrastructure, co-ordination on new infrastructures, permit and administrative thresholds and in-building wiring. A dispute settlement procedure is also included in the Directive to ensure proper administration.

Note that many Member States go beyond these minimum criteria, in particular in Portugal, Spain and France.

All EU Member States are required to have transposed this Directive into national legislation, including the provisions, by 1 July 2016 (31 December for in-building wiring).

#### Pillar 1: Access to and transparency of existing physical infrastructure

The Directive aims at creating a market for physical infrastructure such as ducts, poles, manholes without covering cables, or dark fibre; thus allowing any electronic communications or utilities operator to enter the market and offer access to its physical infrastructure.

Moreover, any network operator has the obligation to give access to its physical infrastructure for the deployment of high-speed broadband networks (30 Mbps and above), upon reasonable request and under fair terms and conditions, including price. Access may however be refused for objective, transparent and proportionate reasons. A Dispute Resolution Mechanism is in place if a commercial agreement cannot be found.

In order to enable access to physical infrastructure, public sector bodies and network operators must provide on request minimum information including a contact point. They must also consent to on-site surveys, at the cost of the access seeker. Access to information may be limited for reasons of network security, national defense, public safety or confidentiality.

#### Pillar 2: Coordination & transparency of planned civil works

Any network operator may negotiate coordination of civil works with electronic communications providers. In addition, undertakings performing civil works fully or partially financed by public means have to meet any reasonable request for coordination of civil works, provided that any additional cost is covered by the communications provider and that the request is made timely.



In order to enable agreements on coordination of civil works, planned civil works have to be made public 6 months in advance. If an undertaking has been authorised to provide public communications networks later requests information about the planned civil works, the network operator has to make available minimum information about the planned civil works. Access may be refused if information is already publicly available or via a Single Information Point. Member States may limit access to the information in view of security and integrity of the networks, national security, public health or safety, confidentiality or operating and business secrets.

#### Pillar 3: Permit granting

All relevant information on procedures for granting permits for civil works must be available via a Single Information Point. Member States are encouraged to organise the application for permits by electronic means. In any event, unless national law specifically provides otherwise, any permit decision should be made in general within 4 months.

#### Pillar 4: In-building infrastructure

All new buildings shall be equipped with physical infrastructure, such as mini-ducts, capable of hosting high-speed networks and with an access point, which can be easily accessed by the providers of public communications networks. The same is valid for major renovations. Member States may provide for exemptions on proportionality grounds, such as for monuments or military buildings.

Providers of public communications networks have the right to access the access point at their own cost and, through it, any existing in-building physical infrastructure. Holders of the rights to use the access point and the in-building physical infrastructure shall meet reasonable requests for access under fair and non-discriminatory terms and conditions, including price. Member States may grant exemptions from this obligation when access to an in-building network is ensured on objective, transparent, proportionate and non-discriminatory terms and conditions (open access model).

### **Dispute Resolution Body & Single Information Point**

Member States have to appoint one or more independent body/ies to resolve disputes between network operators regarding access to infrastructure, access to information and requests for coordination of civil works. Member States have the flexibility to appoint already existing body/ies, or create new body/ies ad hoc. Moreover, Member States have to appoint one or more Single Information Points where information on physical infrastructure and on permits can be made available.



# 6 Infrastructure Network Elements

Expanding from the Point of Presence towards the subscriber, the key sections in an FTTH network and the main elements per section are the following:

| Section                             | Infrastructure elements  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Point of Presence or<br>Access Node | Typically a building or shelter holding the active equipment and the necessary optical distribution frames to distribute the signal to the network.  |
| Feeder Network                      | This part of the network, also called trunk network, comprises of high fibre count cables and appropriate ducting systems.   |
| Fibre Distribution Point<br>(FDP)   | This is a flexibility point, often in the form of a cabinet, holding splitters<br>and distribution panels. In some networks it is reduced to fibre closures<br>or pedestals, where less flexibility is required. |
| Distribution Network                | This part of the network brings fibre capillarity to buildings and<br>individual homes. It includes accessible closures, ducting systems and<br>ends in fibre terminal boxes, whether outdoor or indoor boxes.   |
| MDU vertical distribution and drops | Located inside buildings, typically a tree shaped fibre cabling structure<br>with small floor distribution boxes and flexible cables brings fibres to<br>the individual apartments.                              |
| Outdoor drops                       | When drop access to individual houses or apartments is made from outdoor terminal boxes then cables and accessories differ from internal   |





# 6.1 Point of Presence (PoP)

This acts as the starting point for the optical fibre path to the subscriber and holds the active equipment bays (OLT and backhaul transmission equipment) and the optical fibre distribution frames that link it to the outside plant network. Its physical size depends on the number of homes served and can vary, depending on the operator and demography, from a few hundred to in excess of 10,000 homes.



| Homes connected | Type of access structure |          |
|-----------------|--------------------------|----------|
| 2-400           | in-house                 | street   |
| 400-2,000       | in-house                 | concrete |
| 2,000 or more   | building                 |          |

Figure 35: Size indication for P2P Access Node

The PoP may be incorporated in an existing building or located in a new building or shelter structure. Often both active and passive equipment bays are located in the same place, however if the numbers of homes served is very high, separate rooms for active and passive racks may be necessary.

The PoP should be classed as a secure area. Provision for fire and intrusion alarm, managed entry/access and mechanical protection against vandalism must be considered. In addition, an uninterrupted power supply system (UPS) and an appropriate climate control system are essential.

The interface with the Outside Plant infrastructure occurs through the use of Optical Distribution Frames. Inside these passive frames splicing of the optical fibres from the feeder cable to pigtails takes place. The fibres are then ready in connectors. These connectors are grouped into large patch panels.

Separate cabinets are used to hold the OLT active equipment. The connection between the active ports and the ODF patch panels can be made through two methods, interconnection or cross-connection:

- Interconnection connects the active ports in the OLT equipment to the ODF ports (that terminate the feeder cable), using a simple patch cord.
- The cross-connection method mirrors the ports of the active equipment in an additional ODF bay. The connection to the feeder cable is through the use of a patch cord between the mirror ODF and the feeder ODF.

While interconnection can be appropriate for small Points of Presence, most operators today use cross-connection methods to reduce the complexity of cable management, which can involve thousands of connections, requiring good pre-planning.

Apart of the OLT connection, operators need to plan their PoP layout taking into consideration at least two more factors: the possible insertion of WDMs and splitters, and the insertion of testing systems, such as OTDRs.



With the introduction of new technologies, including NGPON2, the need for point to point links, differentiated services to residential and business end-users, etc the provision of intermediate stages for the addition of WDMs and/or splitters in the layout is becoming necessary. Additionally most operators would like to measure, any port downwards in the network, either through live systems or on-demand systems. This also requires good planning to allow the insertion of OTDRs and similar testing systems.

# 6.2 Feeder Network

Feeder cables run from the Point of Presence (PoP) to the Fibre Distribution Point (FDP). The most typical physical formation of the feeder network is a ring topology to allow for high fibre count cables.

Regulations relating to the dimension of the feeder cables often differs from operator to operator and differs depending on a range of situations: PON topology used (PTP, PTMP), splitter ratio rules and demography, number of spare fibres for point to point and growth, convergence with wireless backhaul, etc. However, the majority of these cables are not smaller than 288fo and be in excess of 864fo.

Most feeder networks are located underground therefore it is important to consider not only the cabling but also the design and dimension of the digging and duct infrastructure. The design phase can be complex and is often a compromise between CAPEX expenditures and an expandable and future proof network. Leaving empty ducts for future growth impacts directly on civil works costs, which are by far the more important in the project. Yet, designing with an absence of an adequate number of empty ducts seriously compromises future growth of the network.

The use of flexible sub-ducts inside the ducts is a common practice as this allows for easier installation, growth, separation and flexibility when organising different cables at different times. For example, in a typical 40mm ID HDPE duct, flexible sub-ducts allow for the installation of 3x16mm cables or 5 x 12mm cables or 10x 8,4mm cables or 18x6mm cables at different times.

Aerial feeder networks are less common and often linked to utility infrastructures. As with the underground network planning, it is important to reserve sufficient room for growth, but there are also additional constraints, such as: the number of cables allowed (often limited by the pole infrastructure), tensile strength depending on span and sag allowed, etc.

# 6.3 Fibre Distribution Point (FDP)

The network needs to provide capillarity to reach blocks, multi-dwelling units (apartments) (MDUs) and single homes (SDUs). Therefore a single feeder cable needs to be converted into several smaller cables that can go deeper into the neighbourhoods and reach the homes of the end-users. This resembles a tree topology where a common stem cable (feeder) is split gradually into more and more smaller branches (distribution cables) to reach every leaf (homes).

This first point of split to the branches, is known as a Fibre Distribution Point and often takes the form of a Cabinet, located above ground, or as a multifunctional closure, below ground.

The area covered by an FDP can vary from under one hundred homes, typically 96 to in excess of 800 homes. In most cases, the numbers are in a range of 256 to 388 homes. FDPs covering larger areas require more fibre in the Distribution Network, more civil works, and typically more CAPEX. Very small areas often involve more cabinets or pedestals with associated costs and operational problems.



In Point to Multipoint networks, FDPs are a very important element as they contain either a centralized splitter in a concentrated topology, or one of the two-three levels of splitting in a cascaded topology. They allow for the optimization of fibres and OLT utilization, and can act as valves to gradually increment CAPEX as take rates grow over time.

# 6.4 Distribution Network

Distribution cabling, connecting the FDP to the terminal boxes closest to the end-users, does not usually exceed distances above 1km. Cables will contain medium-sized fibre counts targeted to serve a specific number of buildings or a defined area.

These cables may be ducted, direct buried, aerial or façade mounted. Distribution cables usually range in size from 12 to 96 fo counts. And, as in the example of the tree, bigger cables in the network are gradually split into smaller cables through the use of distribution closures.

Distribution closures needed to facilitate these changes and capillarity are typically quite different from feeder closures where the need does not arise. Distribution closures require more cable inputs and need to be easily accessible. It is also essential that the individual fibres be protected, as, for many years to come this will be a live closure and will need upgrading in the future.

Ducting can vary. In a Greenfield application (installation of new ducts) ducts can vary from standard 40mm internal diameter HDPE to micro-ducts. With existing duct infrastructures, all types of ducts can be used (PVC, HDPE, concrete) sub-ducted with rigid or flexible sub-ducts.

Cables installed in micro-ducts may be blown to distances in excess of 1km. Micro-ducts, such as flexible sub-ducts, offer a means of deferring cable deployment.

# 6.5 MDU Vertical Distribution and Drops

The Distribution Network ends in a fibre terminal box (FTB). Sometimes these boxes are in a midspan configuration with the distribution cable entering and leaving the box to access further terminals in the network.

Most MDUs have an indoor distribution, while in some countries outdoor façade distributions are allowed and, in such cases, also preferred as this method involves reduced deployment costs.

The most common indoor FTB distribution location is in the basement of the building, and accessed via underground ducts from outside.

This element holds a second or third level of split in PTMP networks. The capacity of both the terminal box ports and splitter levels, is dimensioned to suit the number of apartments covered and expected take-up rate.

### VERTICAL DISTRIBUTION

In the case of a building containing few apartment, a star topology from the terminal box to the apartments, with individual drops cables, can be accepted, however, once the number of apartments goes above 12-16, the most common method of deployment is laying a multifibre riser cable that passes across the floors of the building.

This method involves a Floor Distribution Box located either on each floor or on every two-three floors in the case of some operators. This avoids the congestion of individual drops in the vertical raceways of the buildings. From these floor boxes, individual horizontal drop cables are installed to each end-user, mostly on demand (when service is requested).



# 7 In-house Cabling-Fibre in the Home

Homes today are expected to become intelligent environments – Smart Homes. A Smart Home is a house that has advanced, automatic or remotely operated control systems to manage the living environment; these include temperature gauges, lighting, multimedia, security, window and door operations as well as numerous other functions - an example of the true embodiment of The Internet Of Things.

The expression "Smart Homes" is now well established but there is much more to be said about this concept than first meets the eye. The FTTH Council Europe is interested in promoting this area and to this end has produced the FTTH Smart Guide which can be downloaded from the FTTH Council resources area.

In-house installation or Fibre in the Home extends from an entrance facility normally located in the basement of a building to an optical telecommunications outlet (socket) in the subscriber's premises. This is a typical model for the majority of European MDUs. In the case of Single Dwelling Units an "OTO" can also be integrated into the Building Entry Point. In both scenarios an optical telecommunication socket can form an integral part of the centralised multimedia distribution cabinet.

Unfortunately the residential wiring solution is rarely considered when building a network but is probably the weakest link in the delivery of service. Why are wired networks necessary in the home, when wireless solutions fulfil all the needs? Some arguments for this on-going debate are:

- wired networks are more stable and dependable than wireless and channel interference in wired network from other devices is non-existent (or other access points operating in the same channel).
- wired networks are faster than their wireless counterparts with, multi-media, voice, video, network games and other real time applications performing better in a wired network.
- wired networks are more secure despite the existence of encryption in wireless networks. It is still possible for a determined hacker to access the network with the right tools or awareness of vulnerabilities in the network but wired networks can only be connected from within the home thus making it difficult for the hacker to access.

The aim of this section is to provide the best practices from available technical guidelines as well as from the workflow point of view for the physical media of layer 1 of the Fibre in the Home installation. Generally, the goals of the technical guidelines are to ensure that in-house installation can be shared by two or more service providers, serving the same location. In addition, these guidelines will also highlight the benefit that in-house installation to any given building is a one-time activity.

While the technical guidelines describe a number of important aspects of the in-house installation, it does not represent a complete solution. Each FTTH developer plans and implements an FTTH network according to its own business case, plans and deployments methods.

# 7.1 Fibre in the Home cabling reference model

The in-house installation (FITH) extends from a building entrance facility placed typically in the basement of an MDU building to an optical telecommunications outlet (socket) in the subscriber's premises.





#### Figure 36: Art design of basic Fibre in the Home network elements

A reference model is used, based on international standards, to specify physical infrastructure elements and described processes.



#### Infrastructure elements of the reference model

| POP | Point of Presence            | Act as the starting point for the optical fibre path to the subscriber   |  |
|-----|------------------------------|--|--|
|     | Feeder Cabling               | Feeder cables run from the POP to the Fibre Concentration Point  |  |
| FCP | Fibre Concentration<br>Point | In the Fibre Concentration Point a feeder cable will eventually<br>be converted to smaller drop cables. At this stage the feeder<br>cable fibres are separated and spliced into smaller groups for<br>further routing via drop cables            |  |
|     | Drop Cabling                 | Connects the FCP to the subscriber and may form the last drop to the building  |  |
| BEP | Building Entry Point         | Is the interface between the drop cabling (optical access<br>network) and the internal "in-the-home" network. The BEP<br>allows the transition from outdoor to indoor cable. The type<br>of transition may be a splice or a removable connection |  |
| FD  | Floor distributor            | Is an optional, sub-dividing element between the BEP and the   |  |



|                 |   | OTO located in the riser zone which allows the transition from   |  |
|-----------------|---|--|--|
|                 |   | the vertical to the horizontal indoor cable  |  |
| FITH<br>cabling | Fibre in the Home cabling               | The FITH cabling links the BEP to the OTO. The main components are an optical indoor cable or similar, blowing-based, installation of fibre elements   |  |
| ΟΤΟ             | Optical<br>Telecommunications<br>Outlet | The OTO is a fixed connecting device where the fibre-optic indoor cable terminates. The optical telecommunications outlet provides an optical interface to the equipment cord of the ONT/CPE                                 |  |
| ONT             | Optical Network<br>Termination          | The ONT terminates the FTTH optical network at the<br>subscriber premises and includes an electro-optical<br>converter. The ONT and CPE may be integrated  |  |
| CPE             | Customer Premise<br>Equipment           | The subscriber premises' equipment (SPE/CPE) is any active device, e.g. set-top box, which provides the subscriber with  |  |
| SPE             | Subscriber Premise<br>Equipment         |  |  |
| OCC             | Optical Connection<br>Cable             | The connection cable between the optical telecommunication outlet (OTO) and the subscriber premises' equipment (CPE)   |  |
|                 | Equipment cabling                       | The equipment cabling supports the distribution of a wide<br>range of applications such as TV, telephone, internet access<br>etc. within the premises. Application-specific hardware is not<br>part of the equipment cabling |  |
|                 | User equipment                          | The user equipment such as TV, phone, or personal computer, allows the subscriber to access services   |  |

# 7.2 Riser Cabling

For larger multi dwelling properties, the internal cabling forms a major part of the Fibre in the Home infrastructure. Typical architectures using above mentioned basic network elements are based on these two network structures:

- direct drop architecture (Point to Point)
- riser architecture with or without floor distribution boxes

The interconnection between the BEP and the Floor Distributor and/or the Optical Termination Outlet is known as the riser cabling using conventional cable, micro-duct deployment or installation time efficient pre-connectorized solutions.





Figure 37: Example of riser architecture

Riser fibre cables or ducts fed with fibres are normally installed in existing cable conduits e.g. electrical installations or individually installed cable conduits for the FITH network. It is common to install a vertical riser from the basement or the top floor of the building. The vertical riser represents the most time-consuming installation part of in-house cabling, especially in the section where local fire regulations need to be taken into account as they often pass stairways used as escape routes.

Depending on the architecture, the number of fibres per subscriber and the number of apartments in the building, the riser cables can have various structures: mono fibre, bundles of mono fibre, or bundles of multiple fibres.

As these cables are installed in difficult locations (for example in low bending radius across edges), use of bend-insensitive fibres is a common practice for today's Fibre in the Home cabling.

One of the biggest challenges in deploying FTTH networks inside MDU's, particularly in older buildings, is not with the fibre connectivity, but the practicality of securing cable pathways. For this reason, focus is on small cables with high fibre packing density.

# 7.3 Fibre in the Home cabling – general considerations

# 7.3.1 Fibre characteristics

At the BEP, fibres from the drop cabling (outdoor cable) and fibres from the in-house cabling (indoor cable) have to be connected. The specifications of these fibres are described in the different standard fibre categories and must fulfill certain requirements as described below. Drop and in-house cabling can be realised by using blowing techniques in micro-ducts. The deployment of G657



fibres (IEC 60793-2-50 B6), especially G.657.A2 grade (IEC 60793-2-50 B6a2) and G.657.B3 grade (IEC 60793-2-50 B6b3) are recommended as they both protect transmission over the whole 1260-1650nm window from the impact of tight bending that may be introduced during in-building installation. G.657.A2 grade is by definition compliant (and therefore compatible) to G.652.D. Similarly many G.657.B3 are also compliant with G.652.D with the benefit of providing additional protection against extremely tight bending. 200  $\mu$ m coating versions of G.657.A1 (IEC 60793-2-50 B6a1) and G.657.A2 grades are also available and deliver higher fibre packing density in high-fibre count cables used outdoors.

| Cable type  | ITU Code       | IEC Code  |
|---|----------------|---|
| Outdoor cables  | G.652.D        | IEC 60793-2-50 B1.3                                       |
| Outdoor cables G.657.A1/A2 with possible 200µm coating option |                | IEC 60793-2-50 B6a1/a2 with possible 200µm coating option |
| Indoor cables   | G.657.A2/B2/B3 | IEC 60793-2-50 B6a2/b2/b3                                 |

Figure 38: Fibre characteristics

### 7.3.2 Splicing compatibility between different fibre types

The splicing of different fibre types with different mode field diameters and tolerances may result in higher splicing losses. Therefore the splicing machine needs to be set properly in each case. To determine the correct splicing loss a bi-directional OTDR measurement should be performed. In practice the splicing loss limit is set at  $\leq 0.1$ dB.

### 7.3.3 Bend radius requirements

Bend radius in the BEP and outdoor cable sections for standard single mode fibres G.652D should be 30mm and above. Subcategory G.657.A1 fibres are appropriate for a minimum design radius of 10 mm. For a minimum design radius of 7.5 mm. a subcategory G.657.A2 are the most appropriate.

For Fibre in the Home cabling, especially in the OTO and indoor cable sections, the G.657.A2, G.657.B2 (both appropriate for a minimum design radius of 7.5 mm) or G.657.B3 (appropriate for a radius down to 5mm) can be used to preserve the acceptable attenuation and secure the expected lifetime of typically at least 20 years; mechanical reliability expectation for optical fibres, related to mechanical stresses, is detailed for bend-insensitive fibres in the Appendix I of the ITU-T G.657 recommendation edition 3 ("Lifetime expectation in case of small radius bending of single-mode fibre").

These bending performances are of particular interest for installation and maintenance operations for inside networks (central offices, multi-dwelling units, apartments, individual houses) but also covering outdoor deployments (splice enclosures, joints, mid-span access, street cabinets and similar).



| Cable type        | ITU Code   | IEC Code  | Bend radius (mm)              |
|-------------------|--|---|-------------------------------|
| Outdoor<br>cables | G.652.D  | IEC 60793-2-50 B1.3   | R 30                          |
| Outdoor<br>cables | G.657.A1/A2 with<br>possible 200µm<br>coating option | IEC 60793-2-50 B6a1/a2<br>with possible 200µm coating<br>option | R 10 for A1<br>R 7.5 for A2   |
| Indoor cables     | G.657.A2/B2/B3                                       | IEC 60793-2-50 B6a2/b2/b3                                       | R 7.5 for A2/B2<br>R 5 for B3 |

#### Figure 39: Bend radius requirements

## 7.3.4 Cable type

Optical loose tube fibre cables according to the IEC 60794 series or micro-duct cabling for installation by blowing technique according to the IEC 60794-5 series [6] are typically used for installations at the BEP. The compatibility of other cable constructions to the standard cables at the specified interfaces is to be considered.

Special attention should be given to the recommendations of the cable manufacturer and the specified physical limitations, which must not be exceeded. Damage by mechanical overload during installation may not be immediately apparent, but can later lead to failures during operation.

### 7.3.5 Outdoor cable

A wide variety of outdoor cables exist for use in FTTH networks. If pulled in using a winch, they may need to be stronger than blown versions. Blown cables need to be suitably lightweight with a degree of rigidity to aid the blowing process. Outdoor cables are normally jacketed and non-metallic (to remove the need for earthing and/or lightning protection). However, they may contain metallic elements for higher strength or for added moisture protection.

The fibre count of such cables depends on network structure and size of building. Outdoor cables are covered by IEC 60794-3-11 [7].

The operating temperature range is between -30°C and +70°C.





Figure 40: Example of a Micro-duct cable systems

Figure 41: Example of a conventional loose tube



## 7.3.6 Indoor cable

Indoor cables installed between the BEP and OTO may be suitable for short runs within a house or long runs through a building. These may range from single fibre cables, possibly pre-connectorized, through to multi-fibre designs using tight buffered or loose tube designs. The fibre count should be defined according to the network structure and may number between 1 and 4 fibres. Whilst their design may vary, they are all used in subscriber premises and therefore should offer some form of proper fire protection. Indoor cables are covered by IEC 60794-2-20 [8]. The operating temperature range is between –20°C and +60°C.





## 7.3.7 Colour coding of fibres

Fibres within buffer tubes, as well as buffered fibres, are colour coded to differentiate the fibres within the cable. This colour coding enables installers to easily identify fibres at both ends of the fibre link and also indicates the appropriate position of each fibre in the cable. Colours correspond to standard colours in IEC 60304 [5].

For fibre counts above 12, additional groups of 12 fibres should be identified by combining the above sequence with an additional identification (for example, ring marking, dashed mark or tracer).

## 7.3.8 Micro-duct cabling for installation by blowing

This option utilises compressed air to blow fibre units and small diameter cables through a network of tubes to the subscriber premises. Micro-duct cabling uses small, lightweight tubes, which may be a small conventional duct, typically less than 16mm in diameter (e.g. 10mm outer diameter). Alternatively they could also be smaller tubes, such as 5mm outer diameter, that are manufactured as a single or multi-tube cable assembly, known as "protected micro-duct". It should be possible to install or remove the micro-duct optical fibre cable from the micro-duct or protected micro-duct by blowing during the operational lifetime.

Micro-duct optical fibre cables, fibre units, micro-ducts and protected micro-ducts for installation by blowing are defined in the IEC 60794-5 series [6].

## 7.3.9 Cables containing flammable materials

Indoor cables must have proper fire protection properties. This would typically include the use of a low smoke, zero halogen jacket (LSZH). The cable can be constructed in such a way as to afford some degree of protection from flame propagation, and smoke.

All cables permanently installed in buildings have to follow the Construction Product Regulation effective since 1 July 2017.

As a consequence, all cables have to be tested according to the European Standard EN50399 and need to be classified according to EN13501-6.

Depending on country specific requirements, cables with specific classifications (class Eca (worst performance) to class B2ca (best performance)) have to be selected for different application spaces. In general, higher rated cables (class B2ca, class Cca) are to be preferred where the risk of harm to people is high such as schools and hospitals.



Other criteria may apply, depending on the user's exact requirements, but attention to public safety is paramount.

# 7.4 General requirements at the BEP

For the interface between the optical drop cable and the internal "in-the-home" network a BEP is used for splicing or routing the fibres and therefore generally represents the termination of the optical network from the operators' perspective. For some network structures multiple operators connect the subscriber to their network at either the POP or Fibre Concentration Point (Open Access Network). But for some network structures all operators terminate their drop cable at the BEP. Such a structure generally requires multi-operator housings for the Building Entry Point. Therefore, installation of an optical fibre cable and connecting element at the BEP, can be significantly influenced by careful planning and preparation of an installation specification.

## 7.4.1 Fusion splice at the BEP

Fusion splicing at the BEP is a common practice. The requirements for fusion splices and splice protectors to be used at the BEP are specified below. Splice protector types are heat shrink or crimp.

| Characteristics             | Requirement       |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|
| Max. attenuation of splices | ≤0.15 dB @ 1550nm |
| Return loss                 | > 60 dB           |
| Operating temperature range | –25°C to 70°C     |

#### Figure 43: Fusions splice specifications at the BEP

### 7.4.2 Connection box at the BEP

The size of the fibre management system at the BEP depends on the size of the building, the overall complexity of the installation as well as the network structure.

Typically, fibre management at the BEP uses specially designed boxes allowing the correct number of cables in/out, a required number of splices, fibre reserves and correct fibre management. In addition, fibre identification, a store of unconnected fibres, locking systems and future extension of the BEP boxes are important features to consider. With a PON network the BEP housing may also be used to accommodate passive splitters.

The Ingress Protection is important and depends on the conditions within the space dedicated to the BEP. Typically, an in-house installation would be IP20, and IP54 for outdoors.

The excess lengths in the connection box and/or splice tray are normally no less than 1.5m.









Figure 44: Example of an IP54 BEP

Figure 45: Example of an IP44BEP

Figure 46: Example of an IP55 BEP



Figure 47: A modular solution suitable for a large-scale multi-dwelling unit

# 7.4.3 Splice tray

As the BEP's main objective is to hold the fibre management and the splices between the OSP and the indoor cables, splice trays and additional fixing, splice holders and guiding accessories are needed to support the fibre infrastructure on a high level. Strain reliefs, spaces and rules to store over length fibres are designed mainly for future re-splicing. Bending radius protection must always receive the highest attention.

Various types of splice cassette systems are available, which allow for the handling of individual or groups of fibres or even splitter components, depending on the decisions taken in the design phase. The trays have to fulfill the needs for fixing or stacking.




Figure 48: Example of stacked splice trays with individual fibre management



Figure 49: Example of a stack of splice

#### 7.4.4 Positioning the BEP

This is always a disputed detail, influenced by the conditions in the field, the building owners and physical conditions, which preferably involve low levels of humidity, dust and vibrations. As previously mentioned, the Ingress Protection level has to correspond to these conditions.

It is important that the BEP is positioned close to the vertical cabling path in order to permit optimal transition for the cables.



Figure 50: Example of wall mounted BEP installed next to a power distribution



# 7.5 Floor distributor

The connection to the Optical Termination Outlet for large installations (where for example there is a high density of subscriber premises on one floor in an MDU) can be achieved using a floor distribution point, considered a transition and fibre management point, between the vertical cabling and the horizontal connections.

The floor distributor uses the same box types and has similar functions as the BEP with sizes corresponding to the number of incoming and outgoing fibres. Ingress Protection level is typically IP20. When floor distributors are used, the recommended option to connect the OTO to this point is the single end, pre-connectorized cable solution. In this case the connectorized end of the cable runs to the OTO and the non-connectorized end can be spliced in the floor distribution box.

The link between the floor distributor and the OTO is called horizontal drop. In the network's topology the horizontal drop links the vertical riser cable from the floor distribution to the subscriber interface with the required number of fibres. Typical fibre counts for horizontal drop cable are between one and four fibres depending on local regulations and planned future applications of the network owner.

Connection between the vertical riser and the horizontal drop in the floor box can be achieved by:

- pre-terminated drop cable assemblies at one or both ends
- splicing
- installation of field mountable connectors

Typical issues found with cabling include lack of available space for ducts or cables to pass through walls. Since these cables are installed in difficult conditions and in areas directly accessible by the end subscribers, who are generally unfamiliar with handling fibre, new types of fibre-optic cables equipped with bend-insensitive fibres should be considered in order to support simplified in-house installations, even by untrained installers.

# 7.6 Optical telecommunications outlet (OTO)

Optical Telecommunications Outlets are designed to manage different fibre counts - typically up to 4 - with a minimum bending radius protection of 15mm.

The fibre-optic outlets' design should allow the housing of certain fibre over lengths and provide space for the splices. The design of the fibre over length management should guarantee long-term stability for fibres. Fatigue break should not occur, even after 20 years in use. The outlets' front plate should have cut-outs corresponding to the chosen type of adapters to hold the simplex or duplex connectors according to the network design.

It is important that identification details are marked in a visible position on the OTO. Marking is important mainly for network maintenance and troubleshooting as well as in network testing.

Although generally an OTO is likely to be installed in dusty environments an Ingress Protection level 20 (IP20) is sufficient when the physical contact itself is properly dust protected.





Often the first outlet within subscriber premises is called the Optical Telecommunication Outlet (OTO) offering a choice of sockets for the termination depending upon the respective residential cabling:

- sockets with fixed fibre-optic adapters
- sockets with interchangeable fibre-optic adapters
- hybrid sockets with both fibre-optic and copper-based adapters

Different sockets have different features. Some have dust and laser protected interfaces, radius protected fibre over length management as well as childproof patch cord locking features. Some of the sockets are designed for surface and some for flush mounting.

#### 7.6.1 Fibre type and connection characteristics in the OTO

The most common fibre type currently being used in the OTO is the G.657, allowing a small bending radius. The fibre connection type to the OTO can be:

- pre-terminated cable assemblies
- spliced pigtails
- field mounted connectors

Within the G.657 bend-insensitive family, most current deployment is based on the G657.A2, which is the recommended choice as the indoor cabling standardization in some countries.

#### 7.6.2 Optical connectors

The type of optical connector used in the OTO is usually defined in the design phase. Ideally such a connector is tailored to residential requirements. Increased protection against soiling of the connector end face, integrated laser protection in connectors and adapters as well as an automatic self-release mechanism, which is activated when the permissible release force on the OTO is exceeded, are the main features required for a residential proven connector.

The main recommendation with regard to the end face of the connectors is for APC with a clear specification for the attenuation and return loss (for example Grade B for IL and Grade 1 for the RL – for further details see Chapter 9).

The mechanical and climatic requirements typically used are as defined in IEC 61753-021-2 [15] for category C (controlled environment) with a temperature range of  $-10^{\circ}$ C to  $+60^{\circ}$ C.



Figure 51: Example of a connection cable featuring laser and dust protection and automatic self-release





Figure 52: Detailed view of 2 different outlets: splice tray, bend radius guide, front plate with LC type

The fastest, simplest and most reliable way to install such an OTO is to use a pre-assembled solution, i.e. a cable already connectorized in the factory as shown below. Time consuming fusion splicing inside subscriber premises is not needed with such "plug & play" systems and installers do not require special training or equipment.



Figure 53: Example of pre-assembled Optical Telecommunication Outlet

#### 7.6.3 Splices

The requirements for splices at the OTO are generally in a higher range as it is possible to use both technologies, fusion and mechanical, estimated typically in the design phase at max, 0.25 dB and a RL>60 dB mainly when RF overlay is considered.

#### 7.6.4 Positioning the OTO

House distribution boxes are typically available in newly constructed buildings and, if available, are often used for the OTO installation. It is important a power socket is available for the ONT/CPE which also requires sufficient space and adequate ventilation.



The connection between the OTO and the (SPE) CPE or ONT/(SPE) CPE respectively, has to be optimized for residential use and should feature the following:

- plug & play system
- integrated dust and laser protection
- sealing against dust
- self-release mechanism in order to protect the OTO in case of unintentional pulling of the connecting cables
- lowest bend-radii to prevent damage to the cable
- easy installation or removal by subscribers

In many cases the OTO is installed in living rooms or other spaces dedicated for work and/or entertainment.



Figure 54: OTO integrated in a home distribution cabinet



An OTO can be installed in the home electrical distribution panel as shown in Figure 55.



Figure 55: OTO integrated in the home electrical distribution panel

### 7.6.5 Testing the in-house cabling, the BEP-OTO link

The type of tests used and measurements specified are defined in the design phase, see the Network Planning chapter for more details.

However, the installer is responsible for installing the in-house cabling (BEP-OTO) according to the quality defined in the detailed planning phase and comprise of values described earlier in this section.

The measurements can be carried out as follows:

- 1. Reference test method: bi-directional OTDR measurement between POP and OTO
- 2. Alternative test method: unidirectional OTDR measurement from the OTO For more details see Chapter 11, FTTH Test Guidelines.

# 7.7 Multi Dwelling Unit Infrastructure

#### 7.7.1 Introduction to Multi Dwelling Unit Infrastructure

For Multi Dwelling Units, there is a significant challenge in deploying the fibre within the building infrastructure between the building entry point, through the risers and hallways and finally to the individual apartments. Since the start of large scale FTTH deployments suppliers of optical cable, hardware and equipment have developed a range of solutions aimed at reducing the time and cost of installation and operation whist handling the infinite range of variation which is presented within the MDU environment. In this section 7.7 we describe a comprehensive range of products and solutions that have been developed by the most capable and established suppliers. There is a wide diversity of solutions presented from all corners of the industry however, no attempt has been made to rank them as different solutions are more appropriate to certain regions and installation conditions.

Given that more than 50% of Europe's population lives in multiple dwelling units (MDUs), with even greater concentrations of up to 70% in cities, the deployment of fibre in the MDU environment is



critical for many service providers. Not only do MDUs represent a substantial portion of the subscriber base, these subscribers live in a concentrated geographical area and this makes them an attractive target for FTTH roll-out.

Since the population density in MDUs is high, the cost to deploy FTTH in this environment compared to Single Family Units (SFUs) is low (although the cost still depends on the specific circumstances). As the population density doubles from 4,000 people/km<sup>2</sup> to 8,000 people/km<sup>2</sup>, the cost of civil works and cable installation increases by just 30%, according to analysis by the telecoms consultancy firm iDATE.

That said, MDUs exist in all shapes and sizes, from skyscrapers with hundreds of housing units to apartment blocks containing just a few. Older buildings often have congested utility shafts with very little space available for cables and enclosures, whereas newer MDUs can be designed with fibre network deployments in mind at the outset. Moreover, local regulations often require different approaches. Hence, there are almost as many possible FTTH architectures as there are MDUs. Clearly, there is no "one size fits all" solution.

Figure 56 shows some of the main architectures used worldwide.



Figure 56: Small, medium and high-rise MDU cabled by a direct drop, multi-riser or single riser solution

A Direct drop: For small MDUs, direct drop architectures are applied where subscribers are connected using individual cables between the end-user and a fibre distribution box located either in the basement or on the lower part of the façade.

**B Multi-riser**: In larger buildings, a direct drop approach is often not economical due to, space constraints and the time required to install multiple drop cables. Instead, multiple central riser segments can be used to serve a defined area on each floor around a floor termination box. The main advantage is the space savings achieved in the riser.

**C Single riser**: If space inside the MDU is really constrained, a useful alternative is to install a single riser cable inside a single duct that branches out to individual drop cables at the floor level. The aim is to lessen the visual impact of cabling in these deployments by using adequate vertical areas, for example on the façade or through existing risers.



For every situation, a service provider will need to find an appropriate and optimized approach that makes it possible to deliver reliable services and control the overall network costs. One option is to attach fibre cables to the outside of the building. For the purposes of this report, however, we will concentrate on deployment of fibre cables inside the MDU.

#### 7.7.2 Connectorized Products

Compared to any form of copper cable, fibre is inherently more difficult to join as the fibre cores have to be aligned to sub-micron accuracy during the splice process (whether by a fusion or mechanical method), and the uncoated glass at the joint must be protected. A high concentration of fibre jointing is needed in MDU deployments, which drives the installation costs upwards.

Although fusion and mechanical splicing have been available since the early days of fibre deployment, the process still requires a high degree of skill and capital equipment. As a result, preconnectorized cables, which have been developed specifically for installation inside MDUs, can reduce TCO by reducing the need for skilled labour in the field and moving it into dedicated factories under quality controlled conditions.

In general, the more pre-configuration that can be built in to the assemblies in the factory, the greater the opportunity for cost reduction – assuming, of course, that the ease of installation and flexibility in the field remain guaranteed.

A few common examples of connectorized solutions are described below.

#### 7.7.2.1 Pre-connectorized Drop and Riser Cables

In many traditional MDU architectures, fibre connectivity is needed at the basement terminal, the floor terminal and inside subscriber premises. All these interconnection points could potentially be served by preconnectorized assemblies.

Drop cables can be pre-connectorized at one or both ends. If both ends are pre-connectorized then a facility is needed to store spare cable length. If the drop cable is pre-connectorized at one end only, this end would typically be at subscriber premises. In practice, the drop cable can be pre-installed at the subscriber terminal limiting installation work inside subscriber premises to mounting the terminal on the wall and routing the cable back to the floor box or basement.



Pre-connectorized riser assemblies are available with factoryinstalled connectors at the basement end. Risers are also available

Figure 57: Customer terminal with pre-terminated drop cable

with breakout assemblies pre-configured for connection to a terminal at each floor. These are customised assemblies, designed and manufactured specifically for a specific building. The riser assemblies are delivered with protective sleeves over the breakout assemblies to avoid damage to the connectors during installation. The assembly only needs to be pulled into the riser and the connectors are presented at each floor ready for connection into the floor boxes. This enables the whole fibre network to be installed in the building with no work at all at the fibre level except that of connecting the fibre from the outside world into the splitter input in the basement box.







Figure 58 and 59: Pre-connectorized riser assemblies based on the single fibre SC or LC connector type, (Multi-fibre MPO connector configurations are also available.)

#### 7.7.2.2 Floor Box with Reel Storage

Sophisticated solutions are available that minimise the need for preengineering, while still providing an elegant way to store cable over-length (slack). Such solutions consist of a floor box and a pre-assembled spool of vertical (riser) cable. The "homes passed" installation involves installing the floor box on the floor level and de-reeling the riser cable to the basement. After installation, the excess vertical cable is stored within the product, which means the cable is always at the right length. As it is a preconnectorized product, the fibre is immediately ready for connecting subscribers during the "homes connected" phase of the roll-out.

#### 7.7.2.3 Collapsible Reel Storage

The riser cable can be configured with an MPO connector or a single fibre connector (to connect a splitter in the floor box in a cascaded split topology), reducing the need for splicing in the basement.

This product drastically reduces the MDU deployment time including the time needed for preparation (planning, site inspection, ordering and inventory), as well as the actual installation time. Skilled labour is not a requirement to install the product and project risk is reduced by decreasing the number of measurements needed and improving the consistency of installation. All this results in lower installation and maintenance costs.





Figure 60: Pre-fibered floor box with reel





Figure 61: Multi-fibre dual-ended MPO connectorized riser on a collapsible reel

#### 7.7.2.4 Ferrulized Drop Cable

Ferrulized drop cables are pre-connectorized cables with a slimline profile, which allow the outer connector housing to be "clicked on" after the cable has been pulled or pushed through the duct. This results in faster and more efficient installation.



Figure 62: Ferrulized drop cable

The ferrulized drop cables can be pushed from the subscriber's apartment to either a floor box or a basement distribution box, depending on the size of the MDU. Another approach is to employ a pullable cable whereby the pre-installed pull cord in the microduct is used to pull the cable through the microduct. Both simplex and duplex cables of both types are now on the market.

When micro-ducts are already in place – which is increasingly the case for new buildings –it is straightforward to deploy a pre-connectorized pushable cable from the apartment to the floor box or distribution box. Alternatively, the drop cable can be pulled through the micro-duct infrastructure. This is also a cost-efficient option and requires no extra equipment.



Figure 63: Microducts from living units to floor box and basement box.



Which of these options is available will depend on the configuration of the MDU. For a small MDU, the micro-ducts can run directly to the distribution box and the pre-connectorized cable will be pushed or pulled into place. This is called a "home run" configuration – see Figure 63.

The cable does not need to be pre-connectorized on both ends. In the case of pulled cables, usually only one end is connectorized while the other is spliced or terminated with a field connector depending on its location in the network. This reduces the need for on-site pre-audit visits.

Where the cables are already connectorized on both ends, the person making the connection does not need to have any special skills and the process will be quick. Less time per install means that the labour element of the cost, which is usually significant, is greatly reduced. However,pre-connectorized cable is more expensive (particularly if crews already have fusion splicers at their disposal) but guarantees factory quality. Accurate surveys can help to minimise the storage of slack fibre. An additional factor with pre-connectorized cables is the possibility of integrating the subscriber end into the wall plate that comes embedded in the reel holding the cable. Furthermore, new connections can be easily added as and when subscribers sign up for services.

The same considerations apply when the MDU is larger, but in this case the ferrulized cable is pushed or pulled to the floor box/cabinet, depending on the type of cable being used.

In brownfield installations, it may be possible to use existing ducts, for instance, the ducts that carry coaxial cables, which in Europe are the corrugated type of conduit with typical dimensions 20mm outer diameter (OD) and 14mm inner diameter (ID) or 16mm/10mm (OD/ID). There is usually enough room in these ducts to accommodate fibre cables, given their relatively small size.

As already stated, the ferrulized cable drop requires less time and less skilled labour to install and does not involve specialised and expensive installation tools. Another natural benefit of this approach is that more subscribers can be connected per day. The combination of these benefits will lead to reduced installation costs.

Maintenance costs are also lower with this type of product. For example, an existing cable can be easily removed and replaced without specialist skills or tools.

#### 7.7.3 Externally or Façade Cabled Pre-Connectorized Solutions

The difficulty of securing cable pathways inside buildings can be overcome by using the outer wall of the building as the cable pathway. If permission exists for copper telecom or power infrastructure on the building's external walls FTTH infrastructure may also be approved. This is often the lowest cost solution, but is normally restricted to low rise buildings of up to 4 or 5 floors. The infrastructure is typically installed at the top of the ground floor level, out of reach of passing public, but easily accessible by the installer using a ladder.





Pre-connectorized terminals are installed at the "homes passed" stage and Connectorized drops are routed from the terminals to the individual apartments along the outside of the building. The terminals can use conventional connectors, such as SC or LC inside sealed closures or environmentally hardened connectors on the outside of the terminal.



Hardened connectors are generally more reliable and cost effective in the long term as they do not involve continual opening of closures and sealing of cables by residential installers whose motivation is to install the drop as quickly as possible and move on to the next job.

Terminals can contain splitters so this method is suitable for a range of PON architectures.

Drop cables can be dual purpose with a rugged external jacket which can be easily peeled away over long lengths to reveal a small flexible light coloured LSZH sub-element suitable for routing inside subscriber premises and direct termination with an optical connector.





#### 7.7.4 Micro-ducts Inside The MDU

Micro-duct networks offer the most future-proof solution for technology upgrades during the lifetime of the micro-duct as new cables are easily pulled through. In addition, investment costs are spread over a longer period of time and dark fibre costs are avoided.

Micro-duct networks can be built into greenfield (new build) and brownfield (existing) environments, with the greenfield installation representing the optimal solution as well as offering increased property value. The CAPEX in this situation is spread among developer, telecom operator and owner. Any future construction costs are also minimised.

Micro-ducts can also be installed in existing buildings, and are more cost-effective if the utility shafts can be used for installation.

Typical micro-duct topologies include:

Floor cabinets – connections to housing units are centralised in floor cabinets.

#### Figure 64: Floor cabinets



Basement central distribution frame – individual riser micro-ducts connect directly to individual apartments. Both topologies are typically based on micro-duct sizes of 5/3.5mm or 4/3mm, which are made of HDPE with LSHF additives.

Figure 65: Basement central distribution frame

Either individual single micro-ducts or bundles can be used in the vertical riser section of the installation. The latter centralized topology offers the advantage of minimising the number of fibre splicing points.

Figure 66: Central riser micro-duct







Central riser micro-duct - using one central microduct 16/12 or 20/16mm as a riser duct

A "window" in the central riser is cut at each floor and, on subscriber connection request, the drop fibre cable is installed or pushed in from the window down to the basement using its own weight.

#### 7.7.5 Small Diameter Drop Cables

Small diameter cables of less than one millimetre across with high tensile strength are ideal for horizontal applications in the "homes passed" phase of the roll-out, especially when used to connect the wall outlet inside the housing unit with the floor box, which is typically located in the utility shaft.

The routing path can be complicated and installation methods can include on-wall installation, in-wall installations (typically through ducts) or a combination of both. Pulling the horizontal cable, especially in brownfield situations, can be very time consuming. Small diameter cables with a high tensile strength allow a faster and secure pulling of the cable through congested ducts or pipes, resulting in a faster subscriber connection and lower installation costs.



Figure 67: Small diameter horizontal drop cable

#### 7.7.6 Riser Cable with Reinforced Retractable Fibre

Breakout riser cables typically contain 12 to 96 fibres in reinforced fibre elements, which give significant tensile strength to the fibre elements, thus avoiding the need to embed strength members in the jacket of the cable. The cables have a small diameter and are highly flexible.

Fibres of a substantial length can be retracted at floor level by making a simple window cut, eliminating the need for a second window cut on a higher floor.

These cables allow fast and reliable installation in congested shafts, and a fast and easy connection to the horizontal drop cables. Also, the need for site surveys is reduced as the cable can be pulled through almost all ducts. All this reduces the total installation cost during the "homes passed" phase of the roll-out.





Figure 68: Breakout riser cables with reinforced retractable fibre

#### 7.7.7 Adhesive Fibre Systems

Reduced bend radius technology allows installers to create tight bends in the fibre with low risk of attenuation loss. This has enabled suppliers to develop new adhesive-based fibre systems that provide fast, flexible and nearly invisible installation of fibre cables inside a building. For example, installers can quickly and easily "glue" fibre around baseboards, windows and trim work.

With heat-activated micro-cables a lightweight, portable handheld tool activates the adhesive in the fibre, allowing the fibre to bond continuously to the surface area as it is applied. The heat-activated micro-cable can be compatible with field installable connectors or can be fusion spliced in the network. Other products are available on the market, such as miniature fibre elements that are fixed to the wall with air-cured sealants.

These products offer installers a fast, consistent method for installing fibre throughout a building with low visibility. The portable system can be used for any indoor installation, minimising the installer's equipment costs. This also offers an aesthetically appealing "on-the-wall" alternative to in-duct systems when shafts are congested.







Figure 69: Fibre with adhesive coating

#### 7.7.8 Indexing On Vertical Cable

Fibre indexing uses a fully-connectorized system and allows installers to use a cookie-cutter approach to build out the network.

A key advantage is that installers can connect the same components one after the other which helps to reduce the need for customized material. This can facilitate the adoption of a deployment type called "MDU-in-a-box".

The overall solution is made up of a stub terminal, with the cable stub having a connector and connectorized singleand multi-fibre outputs.

The indexing begins with a 12-fibre cable entering the first terminal. In the terminal, fibre 1 is routed to a splitter for servicing local subscribers and the remaining fibres are "indexed" or moved up as they exit the terminal to connect to the next terminal. Indexing means that the second fibre entering the terminal will exit as the first fibre to enter the next terminal, and so on in a daisy-chained fashion.



#### 7.7.9 Cascaded Splitters

Figure 70: Indexing principle on riser cable

In large MDUs where high take-up rates are anticipated, a cascaded split scenario is very interesting. With such a scenario, the splitters are distributed throughout the MDU rather than being located at the basement boxes.

The first splitter can be located in the entrance facility with multiple fibres going out to the separate floors where a splitter is installed to serve the floor. Alternatively, the first splitter can be placed on one of the served floors. If the building has 8 units per floor, a total of 4 floors can be handled on 32-split ratio system with a 4-way splitter feeding 8 way splitters on each floor. Likewise, a first splitter of 8 ways can be used to serve 4 floors. Or a 16-way first splitter would serve 4 floors. The best option depends on the building and how cabling would be installed.

This scenario is most suited to high-rise MDUs where the number of floors exceeds 12 and/or the number of subscribers per floor is higher than 8.





Figure 71: Cascaded split in medium to large MDUs

This method of deployment has some important trade-offs that need to be carefully considered. One benefit of this technology is that it will facilitate fault location on high-rise MDUs and in turn enable quicker remediation. A further key advantage is that it simplifies the conditions in the basement where the basement box is deployed. In addition, considerably less space is needed in the vertical conduit than for other solutions. Overall, these advantages will help streamline the planning stages of deploying fibre in medium or large MDUs. The flip side of this deployment methodology is that using splitters within the floor box could increase the amount of hardware that needs to be deployed at floor level.

#### 7.7.10 Field-Installable Connectors

Field-installable connectors provide a balance between factory pre-configuration and flexibility of installation in the field. They can be used at all points in the MDU infrastructure and are available in a wide range of connector formats and cable compatibility options.

Recent technology advances have led to field-installable connectors with higher optical performance, which makes them suitable for certain FTTH applications. Although some degree of fibre-handling skill is needed, this method requires less expensive equipment compared to fusion splicing, therefore offers a good middle-ground in the quest to reduce TCO.

Field-installable connectors generally take the form of a standard connector body with a preprepared and polished ferrule with a fibre stub inside. A mechanical splice is included within the body of the connector. The installation process involves preparing the field fibre, inserting it into the rear of the connector, activating the mechanical splice and, finally, mechanically locking the fibre and cable to the connector body, normally with a crimp mechanism.





Mechanical splice with index matching gel

#### Figure 72: Cutaway of a field installable connector

A range of installation tools is available, normally proprietary to each manufacturer's connector type. These tools aid the installation process, and some can provide an indicative result for the performance of the assembled connector.

Finally, "splice-on" connectors are also available. With these connectors, the ferrule contains a factory-installed stub fibre, which is fusion spliced onto the field fibre using a fusion splice machine. Normally a special adaptor is needed to hold the connector in the machine during the splicing process. A small heatshrink sleeave protects the fusion splice. Finally, the plastic connector body parts are clipped into place onto the ferrule assembly covering the heatshrink sleeve.



Figure 73: Field installable connector installation tool



Figure 74: Splice-on connector



# 7.8 CPE (SPE)

Subscriber premises equipment is the point where the passive network ends and the active equipment is installed. Generally, fibre is terminated inside the CPE using one connector. CPEs predominantly have an SC interface which apparently is difficult to access for end-users. These devices are either purchased by the subscriber, or provided by the operator or by the service provider.

# 7.9 General safety requirements

Installations must be performed by certified technicians. Laser safety requirements are in accordance with IEC 60825 series [19] and other national or local standards.

Designers and installers are responsible for correctly interpreting and implementing the safety requirements described in the referenced documents.

#### 7.9.1 Laser safety

According to the IEC 60825 series the type of subscriber premises is "unrestricted".

As long as FTTH implementations respect hazard level 1 (IEC 60825 series [19]) at the subscriber premises, as well as laser class 1 or 1M (IEC 60825 series [19]) of the laser sources, no special requirements regarding marking or laser safety are necessary at the subscriber premises (from the optical cable entry point into the building through to the optical-electrical converter, including BEP and OTO).

# 7.10 Fibre in the Home workflow

One of the key factors of a cost efficient FTTH rollout is the in-house cabling from the Building Entry Point (BEP) to the ONT or CPE. FTTH-infrastructure distribution costs are approximately 21% for the active network, 48% for the passive network and 31% for the in-house fibre network. Optimisation of the Fibre in the Home cabling delivery is therefore crucial in maintaining the rollout budget within a certain limited framework. Therefore the resources used for FITH cabling should be carefully planned and dispatched if excessive manpower hours, time and budget are to be avoided. This is especially so when it comes to a mass-roll-out of FTTH including Fibre in the Home cabling, the in-house cabling processes should be highly professional and optimized.

Additional areas that must be considered in the Fibre in the Home cabling processes are the signalhandover from the outside plant installation, legal access to the building, contracts with the building owner, FTTH service contracts with the subscriber, material logistics, the ONT configuration and the in-house installation.

The parties and necessities involved in successful Fibre in the Home cabling are:

**Network department/carrier**: responsible for the delivery of the FTTH signal to the BEP or FCP. The BEP is usually the interface between Network department/Network carrier and the Fibre in the Home cabling provider, but the FCP could also be the demarcation point.

Acquisition: arranges the legal access to the building and/or apartment

Legal: prepares the legal documents and basics for access to the building/apartment

**Data base**: is a centralized data base for all legal documents, network documents, in-house cabling documentation and subscriber relationships



Building owner: must be consulted for access to the building and cabling agreements

Marketing: must prepare forecast per region and per area

Sales: signs contracts with subscribers

Subscriber: signs contract based on personal requirements or service available

Logistics: responsible for seeing that correct and sufficient material is delivered to requested place

Dispatcher: arranges appointments with subscribers or building owner, dispatches technicians

Installation Technicians: install in-house cabling and the ONT/CPE

Configuration Technician: pre-configure the ONT according to subscriber data

#### 7.10.1 General Fibre in the Home environment

Fibre in the Home processes are located between the implementation of the outside plant network (including the drop cable between FCP and BEP if necessary) and the operation of the FTTH network. After rollout of the outside plant network up to the demarcation point (BEP), the in-house cabling connects the ONT/CPE with the BEP and once the activation of the ONT is complete the FTTH subscribers go into operation.



#### 7.10.2 Acquisition

Fibre in the Home can start once the outside plant FTTH network has been installed and the signal is on the line. Handover from outside plant network to in-house cabling can occur on a Building Entry Point (BEP) outside or inside the building. To implement the Fibre in the Home cabling an agreement with the building owner is necessary and ideally should take the form of a legal document. The contents of this document should include all mutual agreements for the in-house cabling, such as the material of the cabling, cabling locations, ownership of the cabling, permitted user of the cabling, access to the building, access to the cabling and maintenance issues. To speed up the process, acquisition could be completed in advance if the network rollout plan is known.





Figure 75: High Level Acquisition Process



Figure 76: Acquisition Process



#### 7.10.3 Sales

The aim of sales activity targets is to get as many signed service contracts as possible. In a brownfield FTTH rollout, existing service contracts should be upgraded to include additional FTTH services. Greenfield areas involve acquiring signatures on new service contracts by each subscriber. All sales activities should commence as soon as the network rollout plan and the sales strategy and product/service portfolio are known.

A general FTTH rollout strategy could involve rolling-out FTTH to include only a specific area once subscribers have signed up for a minimum number of FTTH-services. In such cases, sales activities have to be conducted before the network rollout.



Figure 77: High Level Sales Process



#### Figure 78: Sales Process



#### 7.10.4 Installation Preparation

Installation is dependent upon sales and acquisition activities. The owner of the work order is the dispatcher who coordinates the technicians with the subscriber and/or the building owner as well as with the logistics team and activates the ONT. Additional visits by the technician to the subscriber/building owner should be avoided when using proper time-planning and appointments by the dispatcher.



#### Tasks

- Update inventories • Handle customer request
- •
- Identify and collect required information
- •
- Complete order and suborder with relevant parameters
- . Consider ser∨ice and resource specifications
- Specify relevant services & resources
- Deploy workforce operation
- Document results and
- effort
- Obtain final customer acceptance / Set trigger to start ongoing operation / Prepare data for billing / Close realization and supplier order
- Monitor order status
- including supplier delivery
- Specify order type/decompose order
- Check production plan
- •
- Consider resource specification
- Check feasibility of resources •
- Identify/reserve critical resources
- Change, time shift or de-allocate reserved resources (if required)
- Identify affected resources / services, assess impact
- Generate or modify and split realization order
- Evaluate suppliers / Initiate supplier order (if required)
- Execute escalation (if required)

- Input
- Information from Network carrier about network rollout area and project schedules
- Address lists/Street sur∨ey details • with maps
- Updated customer contact history
- Updated customer inventory
- Product and service portfolio Master data (products, services, contracts, customers) / Usage behavior and statistic •
- Information about contract with owner of the buildings •
- Customer inventory, location, configuration and desired dates / •
- Customer priorities Status information / Delivery •
- dates Time slots for workforce operation
- Supplier equipment / Essential materials
- Different order type (Provisioning, Change, Termination, Feasibility, Cancellation, Time shifting, Additional service) •
- Capacity perform. data / Restart fulfillment
- Service- / resource specification, including capabilities /Supplier list, including OLAs
- Time and delivery conflicts // SLA + OLA

# Critical

- Level of automation
- Quality of input-documentations Time of order handling
- Delivery on time / budget / quality / quantity •
- Standardized vs. individual offers
- Product complexity and information know-how • Achievement of customers desired date
- Availability of critical resources
- Missing escalation possibilities

#### Figure 80: Installation Preparation Process



Inventory update Updated CRM records

Output

- Updated street survey .
- Customer data updated •
- Updated customer inventory/Acknowledgement /Status information Customer settings and
- configurations

•

- Inventory update
- Result of feasibility check /Capacity requirements Retirement date
- Delta list between requested and available service specifications or resources
- Time slots for workforce operation
- Reserved or deallocated resources
- Supplier information and order / Realization order / Realization suborder / Logistic order
- Kind of input order notification / Status information / Deli∨ery dates

#### 7.10.5 Installation

The installation technician should be able to start and finish the installation work according to the dispatcher's timeframe and additional information from sales and/or acquisition. He receives the material and the pre-configured ONT. Before he starts with installation work he should check for incoming signal at the BEP. If no signal is located at the BEP, a fault notification should be created for the Network carrier.



Figure 81: High Level Installation Process



# Installation

#### Tasks

- Receive realization suborder, including reserved resources
- Receive equipment of supplier or logistic/ Install and configure resources/ Acti∨ate services
- Test services and resources / Execute overall acceptance test
- Obtain final customer acceptance / Set trigger to start ongoing operation /Close realization and supplier order
- Identify deltas and coordinate change or time shift
- Restore customer settings / configurations (if required)
- Complete and document suborder with relevant parameters, priorities and time schedule
- Reconcile workforce ٠ appointment (if required)
- Install or extend components (if required)
- Configure and activate ports and other resources / Activate services / Create trouble ticket (if required)
- Test services and resources for operational readiness / Execute overall acceptance test (if required)
- Document results. •
- configuration and effort
- Generate final report /Update inventories
- Close realization order
- Generate continuously status information

#### Input

- Updated customer contacts •
- Updated customer inventory Information about contract with ٠ owner of the buildings
- Realization order / Realization • suborder
- Reserved resources / Customer inventory, location. configuration and desired dates / Customer priorities
- Status information / Delivery dates
- Service-/resource specification Time slots for workforce
- operation Supplier equipment / Essential
- materials
- Test scenarios / SLA + OLA

#### Output

- Inventory update
- Customer data updated
- Configured product or solution •
- Updated customer • inventory/Acknowledgement /Status information
- Activated services
- Delivered resources, equipment ٠ or components
- Documented service and resource configuration Documented test results
- Customer settings and configurations
- Documented effort for billing /Trouble ticket
- Inventory update / Final report
- Closed order and supplier / logistic order

# Critical Issues

- Level of automation •
- Delivery on time/first done rate •
  - Quality of input-documentations
- Time of order handling •
- Delivery on time / budget / quality / quantity •
- Product complexity and information know-how •
- Quality of order /suborder content •
- Consolidation of simultaneous provisioning and termination handling
- Detection of priorities •
- Scheduling of workforce operation
- Supplier delivery /quality of equipment
- Configuration and activation in time
- •
- Inventory update
- Preparation of efforts for billing
- Generation of status information in time

#### Figure 82: Installation Process

#### 7.10.6 IT systems

Appropriate IT-systems should be used as much as possible (if available). Possible IT-systems are:

- NMS/EMS
- Inventory system
- GIS
- WFM
- CRM

All systems, if not using the same database, should synchronize their data periodically.



- Execution of overall acceptance test

# 8 Deployment Techniques

This chapter provides a description of available infrastructure deployment techniques. More than one technique may be used in the same network, depending on the specific circumstances of the network build. As roughly 50% of the cost of a ducted network build is related to civil works (trenching) it is recommended that an evaluation be conducted to ascertain whether existing infrastructure (ducts from telecom operators, municipalities, power companies, the public lighting system, sewers, water and gas pipes as well as for an aerial deployment existing poles) can be utilised.

# 8.1 Duct infrastructure

This is the most conventional method of underground cable installation and involves creating a duct network to enable subsequent installation of cables using a pulling, blowing or floatation technique. A conventional duct infrastructure can be constructed in several ways:

- 1. Main conduit for sub-ducting (100-110mm; PVC)
- 2. Sub-ducts (18-63mm; HDPE)
- 3. Micro-ducts (3-16mm; HDPE)
- 4. Micro-duct Bundles (tight, loose, flat; HDPE)

Each of these can be either

- Direct buried/thick walled ducts.
  These can be laid directly into the ground and do not need additional mechanical protection.
- B. Direct installed/thin walled ducts. These cannot be placed directly in the ground but are installed inside the bigger ducts or cable trays using the blowing or pushing method.



Figure 83: Deploying micro-duct infrastructure







A duct infrastructure provides high flexibility allowing additional access network development and reconfiguration.

As with all civil works, when installing an FTTH duct infrastructure, consideration must be given to existing buried duct systems as well as inconvenience and disruption to traffic and pedestrians.



Figure 84: Conventional trenching vs microtrenching

#### 8.1.1 Conventional sub-ducts vs micro-ducts

The main, but not only, difference between sub-ducts and micro-ducts is the size. Telecom ducts went through the same process of size reduction as fibre optic cables.

Since micro-cables offer ~50 percent reduction in size and 70 percent reduction in weight compared with standard cables, the duct size has also been reduced over the years.



#### **Conventional sub-duct**

- 18 63mm OD
- only single cable capacity\*
- branching route = fibre joints
- can be used with standard loose tube cables

\* 2 or more cables can be installed in limited length

#### **Micro-duct**

- 3-16mm OD
- higher density of independent duct routes
- branching route = inter-connecting microducts
- accommodates micro-cables
- smaller and cheaper
- easy duct routing/high network flexibility
- increases capacity of existing sub-ducts



#### 8.1.2 Micro-duct solutions

Micro-ducts are defined in the standard IEC 60794-5-20 as a small, flexible, lightweight tube with an outer diameter typically less than 16 mm. cable. They accommodate micro-cables which place greater reliance on micro-ducts for mechanical protection. Thus a micro-duct must meet the adequate impact, compression and bending requirements necessary for an application.

Depending on chosen application there are 2 types of micro-ducts

- A. Direct Buried/Thick walled
- B. Direct Installed/Thin walled
  - A. **Thick walled/DB micro-ducts** do not need to be placed or blown inside another duct or tube. These micro-ducts can be direct buried into the ground as single micro-ducts or in various bundle configurations.
    - I. Tight bundles thick-walled micro-ducts are assembled into bundles, surrounded by a thin jacket that holds all micro-ducts together. These bundles can be very stiff and may suffer from undulation due to length differences of individual micro-ducts. Therefore, bundles of thick-walled micro-ducts offer the most efficient and installationfriendly solution. Bundles can comprise of various MD sizes and are available in a wide variety of shapes.
    - II. Loose bundles loose bundles of thick walled micro-ducts are installed inside thin sleeves allowing them to move freely inside. This solution is mainly used for pulling into existing main conduits and ensures maximum occupation. Due to the stiffness and tension of the thick walled microducts, the achievable pulling length is limited (300-400m). Also, the cable blowing distance is limited because of micro-ducts crossings within such bundles. Suitable for short distance connections.
    - III. Flat bundles bundles of thick walled micro- ducts can vary in design (micro-ducts surrounded by a thin jacket as a group, or individually and connected). Such a flat bundle eliminates crossings of individual micro-ducts, and individual micro-ducts are easily accessible for connecting or branching. The bundles with individual MD jacketing can also be folded which helps to minimize the occupied space and provides additional rigidity. Flat bundles can be direct buried or pulled into main conduits to increase a conduit capacity. Also used for micro-trenching technique.









- B. Thin walled/DI micro-ducts sometimes called protective micro-ducts. These are microducts which need extra mechanical protection and are usually installed inside buildings, cable trays or are blown inside the sub-duct increasing its capacity. They can also be assembled into bundles
  - I. **Tight bundles** the thin-walled micro-ducts are assembled into bundles, surrounded by a thin jacket that holds together all micro-ducts. These bundles are mainly pulled inside the main conduits to increase the duct route capacity. Bundles can be assembled different MD sizes and are available in a wide range of shapes.
  - II. **Loose bundles** loose bundles of thin walled micro-ducts are individual MDs installed in sub- ducts either in the field by blowing/pulling or pre-installed during production. Some space for the micro-ducts in the sub-duct is available and not only enhances blowing of the micro-ducts, it also improves impact resistance (micro-ducts can move away) and offers better cable jetting performance.
  - III. Flat bundles bundles of thin walled micro- ducts are used in LSHF variant indoors or pulled inside the occupied main conduits. As they are flexible, they can fit in very congested spaces.







All the micro-duct solutions can be reproduced in a variety of materials, colours and special additives. Subscribers often use special Anti-rodent or Low Smoke Halogen Free variants for indoor applications. Special inner layers provide better cable blowing performance. Material, colour, diameter, inner layer, application and print stream, all offer a variety of products and the freedom to choose the best solution to suit each project.

| Application    | Material      | Inner Layer  | Colour           |
|----------------|---------------|--------------|------------------|
| Direct Install | HDPE          | Smooth       | Transparent      |
| Direct Burial  | LSHF          | Ribbed       | Stripped         |
|                | UV Stabilized | AntiStat     | RAL colour codes |
|                | AntiRodent    | Low Friction |                  |



#### 8.1.3 **Micro-duct accessories**

There is a complete system of accessories available on the market for micro-duct networks; from basic connectors, gas-blocking end caps and special branching boxes to tailor-made unique sealing systems.

An essential part of duct networking is ensuring its quality and performance for a long period of time. Duct networks should always be designed to include a complete set of accessories, such as connectors, end caps, reducers, duct sealings, cable sealings, branch and cable loop boxes, etc.



Figure 85: Branching elements





Figure 86: Sealing systems



Figure 87: PushFit connectors & end caps



#### 8.1.4 Fibre optic cables for FTTH

There are a wide variety of standard fiber optic cables that can be used in FTTH network.



Figure 88: FOC cable selection

Although cable designs can vary, they are, however, based on a small number of elements. The first and most common building block is a loose tube. This is a plastic tube containing the required number of fibres (typically 12). This tube is lined with a tube filling compound that both buffers the fibres and helps them to move within the tube as the cable expands and contracts according to environmental and mechanical extremes. Other building blocks include multiple fibres in a ribbon form or a thin easy-strip tube coating. Fibres may also be laid in narrow slots grooved out of a central cable element.

Tubes containing individual fibres or multiple ribbons are laid around a central cable element that comprises of a strength member with plastic jacketing. Water blocking materials such as water-swellable tapes or grease can be included to prevent moisture permeating radially or longitudinally through the cable, which is over-sheathed with polyethylene (or alternative materials) to protect it from external environments. Fibres, ribbons or bundles (protected by a coloured micro-sheath or identified by a coloured binder) may also be housed within a large central tube. This is then over sheathed with strength elements.

If cables are pulled using a winch, they may need to be stronger than those that are blown as the tensile force applied may be much higher. Blown cables need to be lightweight with a degree of rigidity to aid the blowing process. The presence of the duct affords a high degree of crush protection, except where the cable emerges into the footway box. Duct cables are normally jacketed and non-metallic, which negates the need for them to be earthed in the event of lightening. However, they may contain metallic elements for higher strength (steel central strength members), for remote surface detection (copper elements) or for added moisture protection (longitudinal aluminium tape). Duct environments tend to be benign, but the cables are designed to withstand possible long-term flooding and occasional freezing.



#### Micro-cables and fibre units

Micro-cables are small, light-weight fibre optic cables designed for air blowing installation into microducts.

Fibre Units are specifically engineered for Blown Fibre applications. The fibres are contained within a soft inner acrylate layer; an outer harder layer protects the fibre from damage. The blowing distance is typically 1000 meters at 10 Bar.

The micro-ducts and micro-cables act together as a system. The cables are installed by blowing and may be coated with a special layer improving blowing performance.





Figure 89: Micro-cables

Figure 90: Fibre unit with 4 fibres

The micro-duct size must be chosen to suit the cable and required fibre count. Typical combinations of cable and duct sizes are given in the following table, however other sizes and combinations can be used.

| Micro-duct outer<br>diameter (mm) | Micro-duct inner<br>diameter (mm) | Typical fibre counts | Typical cable<br>diameter (mm) |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| 16                                | 12                                | 24–216               | 9.2                            |
| 12                                | 10                                | 96–216               | 6.5–8.4                        |
| 10                                | 8                                 | 72–96                | 6–6.5                          |
| 7                                 | 5.5                               | 48–72                | 2.5-3.9                        |
| 5                                 | 3.5                               | 6–24                 | 1.8–2                          |
| 4                                 | 3                                 | 22–12                | 1–1.8                          |









Figure 92: Optical fibre micro-cables (not to scale)





Figure 93: Examples of Fibre units. Micro-duct spelling in diagram

The distance achieved through blowing will depend on the micro-duct, cable and installation equipment used as well as route complexity, particularly turns in the route and vertical deviations.

As the fibre reaches its final drop to the home, it may be possible to use even smaller micro-ducts (e.g. 5mm/3.5mm or 4mm/3mm), since the remaining blowing distance will be quite short.

# 8.2 Cable Installation techniques

## 8.2.1 Duct Cable installation techniques

#### 8.2.1.1 Cable installation by pulling

The information given below is an outline of the required installation and equipment considerations. Reference should also be made to IEC specification 60794-1-1 Annex C, Guide to Installation of Optical Fibre Cables.

When cables are pulled into a duct, a pre-existing draw-rope must be in place or one installed prior to cable winching. The cable should be fitted with a swivel allowing the cable to freely twist as it is installed; also a fuse is required which is set at or below the cable's tensile strength. Long cable section lengths can be installed if the cable is capable of taking the additional tensile pulling load, or by "fleeting" the cable at suitable section mid-points to allow a secondary pull operation, or by using intermediate assist pullers (capstans or cable pushers). Fleeting involves laying loops of fibre on the surface using figure of eight loops to prevent twisting in the cable. If spare ducts or sub-ducts are installed, then further cables can be installed as the need arises ("just in time").

When installing cables, their mechanical and environmental performances should be considered as indicated on the supplier's datasheets. These should not be exceeded. The tensile load represents the maximum tension that should be applied to a cable during the installation process and ensures that any strain imparted to the fibres is within safe working limits. The use of a swivel and mechanical fuse will protect the cable if the pulling force is exceeded.



Figure 94: Pulling cable swivel



Figure 95: Cable guide pulley



Cable lubricants can be used to reduce the friction between the cable and the sub-duct, thus reducing the tensile load. The minimum bend diameter represents the smallest coil for cable storage within a cable chamber. Suitable pulleys and guidance devices should be used to ensure that the minimum dynamic bend radius is maintained during installation. If the cable outer diameter exceeds 75% of the duct inner diameter the pulling length may be reduced.

#### 8.2.1.2 Cable installation by air

Traditionally, cables were pulled into ducts. More recently, particularly with the growth of lightweight non-metallic designs, a considerable proportion of cables are now installed by blowing (if the duct infrastructure was designed for this action). This system can be quicker than pulling, and may allow longer continuous lengths to be installed, thus reducing the amount of cable jointing. If spare ducts or sub-ducts are installed, then subsequent cables can be installed as the need arises.

When cables are blown into a duct, it is important that the duct network is airtight along its length. This should be the case for new-builds, but may need to be checked for existing ducts, particularly if they belong to a legacy network.

A balance must be struck between the inner diameter of the duct and the outer diameter of the cable. If the cable's outer diameter exceeds 80% of the duct's inner diameter, air pressures higher than those provided by conventional compressors are required or the blow length may be reduced. Nevertheless, good results have also been obtained for between 40% - 85% fill ratios. If the cable is too small then this can lead to installation difficulties, particularly if the cable is too flexible. In such cases, a semi-open shuttle attached to the cable end can resolve this difficulty. Amazingly, such a shuttle can also prevent the cable from getting stuck in tight bends when the fill ratio is high and the cable stiff.

A cable blowing head is required to both blow and push the cable into the duct. The pushing overcomes the friction between the cable and duct in the first few hundred meters and hauls the cable from the drum. A suitable air compressor is connected to the blowing head. The ducts and connections must be sufficiently air tight to ensure an appropriate flow of air through the duct. Hydraulic pressure at the blowing head must be strictly controlled to ensure no damage occurs to the cable.

#### 8.2.1.3 Cable installation by floating

Considering that most outside plant underground cables are exposed to water over a major part of their life, floating is an alternative method to blowing. Floating can be conducted using machinery originally designed for blowing: air is simply replaced by water. Compared to blowing, the smaller effective weight during floating makes it possible to place considerably longer cables in ducts without an intermediate access point. Lengths of 10 km in one shot have already been reported.

Floating can prove very efficient for installing cable in many situations. The only significant friction contributor remaining is from bending the stiff cable in curves and undulations in the duct trajectory, this is especially relevant when the cable diameter increases compared to the duct inner diameter. Nevertheless, using the floating method, longer lengths are usually achieved than with blowing, and amazing results have been reached with cables ranging from small to large. Some examples: floating 6 mm cable into 10/8 mm micro-duct (normal fill factor < 80%) with 22 bar over lengths up to 4 km; floating 7 mm cable into 10/8 mm micro-duct (fill factor 88%) with 25 bar over 2.3 km; floating a 38 mm cable into a duct with internal diameter of 41 mm (fill factor 93%) over a length of 1.9 km. Similar examples already exist for power cables, where 82 mm cables have been floated into ducts of 102 mm internal diameter (fill factor 80%)!



Floating is also a safe method for removing cables from the duct, thus making possible the re-use of said cable. Although blowing out cable is common practice, careful handling of the blown out cables is required.

#### 8.2.1.4 Lubrication

Lubrication of both duct and cable is possible. Lubricant is poured into the duct, which is then spread by blowing a foam plug through. Dedicated sizes of foam plugs are available for different sizes of ducts. A special lubricant has been designed to lubricate the cable which is also lubricated by pulling, blowing and floating.

The lubricators coat the cable inside a pressurized space. The lubricators are constructed in such a way as to allow the airflow to bypass without a noticeable drop in pressure and at the same time the cable, which is pushed during blowing, is guided without the risk for buckling. Different sizes of cable lubricators are available (ducts from 3 mm to 50 mm OD, cables from 0.8 mm to 18 mm). They can be dividable or not (no need for drop cables for Fibre to the Home), can contain a lubricant reservoir or not and are either for installed into blowing equipment or can be placed in-line in a duct (suitable for all brands of blowing equipment). Examples of cable lubricators are shown below.



8.2.1.5 Intelligent cable installation



Figure 96a: Buckled cable after pushing too hard during blowing



Figure 96b: Example of intelligent

blowing device
Although installing cables (or micro-ducts) into ducts by synergy of pushing and blowing (or floating) has become standard technology today, there is an increasing demand for intelligent installation devices that are able to detect and record the installation parameters and find the cause after a cable fault has occurred. Cable installers lack direct feedback from their installation work and network owners usually receive fault information too late, see e.g. Figure 96a.

The first stage is to detect and record (electronic monitoring and registration) the right cable installation parameters, to guarantee quality of the network. The second stage involves implementing an electronic safeguard (half automatic function) followed in the third stage with a fully automatic device, which is activated by pressing a button, and runs the installation until the end in accordance with the specified optimal installation parameters.

Critical parameters are the pushing force (the cable might buckle, or its jacket could be damaged), the pressure of the injected air (blown micro-ducts might implode depending on external air pressure), the temperature of the injected air (the maximum pushing force might depend on the latter) and slip between the drive belts or wheels and the cable. Other parameters that need and can be monitored include: ambient temperature (to check whether an after-cooler was used after the compressor) and the cable speed (risk for unspooling accidents). All parameters are measured as a function of installed length (this is also recorded).

Before using the device the maximum value of the critical parameters must be registered. The maximum pushing force of the cable is not always known (this does not always equate to the maximum pulling force). It depends, among others, on the stiffness of the cable (also not always known) and on the free space of the cable in the duct. It can also depend on the blowing device. It is recommended that a crash test be conducted before cable installation to ascertain the maximum pushing force. This requires a short piece of duct (about 1-2 m and preferably transparent) with the same internal diameter as the duct into which it will be installed, with end stop coupled to the blowing device. The cable is then inserted into the device and run at full speed against the end stop. This is carried out with increasing pushing force until the maximum value is reached. This maximum is reached when either the drive belts or wheels slip over the cable, the cable is damaged, the cable buckles in the machine (Figure 96c) or the undulation period in the duct becomes too short (Figure 96d).



Figure 96c: Buckling of cable in blowing device

Figure 96d: Undulation of cable in duct



### 8.2.1.6 Cable de-coring

New techniques have been developed to successfully decore cables. With this method, the core of copper cables can be replaced cost-effectively and speedily with fibreoptics.

Instead of digging up the entire cable length, the cable is now only accessed at two points 50 to 400 meters apart. A special fluid is pumped under pressure into the space between cable sheath and cable core wrapping, detaching the core from the sheath.

Next, the old cable core is extracted mechanically and treated for clean, environmentally friendly disposal or recycling.

Simultaneously, an empty, accurately fitted sheathing for the new fibre-optic cable is drawn into the old cable sheath.

Afterwards these so-called "micro-ducts" are connected, the pits are closed and, finally, the empty cable sheath is refilled with fibre-optics.



Figure 97: Cable de-coring

Apart from the positive environmental aspects – old cables can be recycled homogenously, and the fluid is biodegradable – this technique can be 40% to 90% cheaper than installing a new cable, especially as completion time is much faster and planning and building costs lower.

### 8.2.1.7 Access and jointing chambers

Suitably-sized access chambers should be positioned at regular intervals along the duct route and located so as to provide a good connection to the subscriber's drop cables. The duct chambers must be large enough to allow for all duct cable installation operations, storage of slack cable loops for jointing and maintenance, cable hangers and bearers, as well as storage of the cable splice closure.

The chambers may be constructed on site or provided as pre-fabricated units to minimise construction costs and site disruption. On site constructed modular chamber units are also available. Where existing legacy access chambers are unsuitable due to size or over population of cables/closures then an 'off-track or spur' chamber should be considered.

### 8.2.1.8 Cable joint closures

Cable joint closures may take the form of a track or straight-through joint, to join sequential cable and fibre lengths together, or provide a function for distribution of smaller drop cables. Closures will usually be sited in the manhole or underground chambers. Occasionally the cable joint may occur within an off-track chamber or above ground cabinet.

There are no specific regulations relating to the spacing of the closures, however they may be placed as regularly as every 500m in medium-density areas and as frequently as every 250m in high-density areas. Certain networks may require the use of mid-span joints, which enable fibres to be continued through the joint un-spliced; only the required fibres are intercepted for splicing.

The closure must be resistant to long term flooding and accessible if the need arises for future additions or alterations to subscriber fibre circuits.



# 8.2.2 Direct buried cables

Direct burial offers a safe, protected and hidden environment for cables; however, before the cables are laid in a narrow trench, a detailed survey must be conducted to avoid damaging other buried services that may be in the vicinity.



Figure 98: Product map for direct buried cable

# 8.2.2.1 Installation options

There are a wide variety of underground installation techniques available to date. The flowchart below outlines the most applicable underground installation methods





<sup>1</sup> Hard ground conditions include, but are not limited to, rock, hard compacted ground, asphalt, frost <sup>1</sup> Soft ground conditions include, but are not limited to, sand, loam, clay

### 8.2.2.2 Types of direct buried cable

Direct buried cables are similar to duct cables as they also employ filled loose tubes. The cables may have additional armoring to protect them, although this depends on the burial technique. Pretrenching and surrounding the buried cable with a layer of sand can be sufficient to allow for lightweight cable designs to be used, whereas direct mole-ploughing or backfilling with stone-filled soil may require a more robust design. Crush protection is a major feature and could consist of a corrugated steel tape or the application of a thick sheath of suitably hard polyethylene.



Figure 99: cable with corrugated steel protection



Figure 100: non-metal direct buried cable



## 8.2.2.3 Lightning protection

Non-metallic designs may be favored in areas of high lightning activity. However these have less crush protection than a cable with a corrugated steel tape. The steel tape can cope with a direct lightning strike, particularly if the cable contains no other metallic components and it also offers excellent crush protection.

## 8.2.2.4 Rodent protection

Corrugated steel tape has proven to be one of the best protections against rodent damage or other burrowing animals. If the cable has to comprise of non-metallic materials then the best solution is a layer of rigid dielectric members between two jackets. A further option could be a complete covering of glass yarns that may deter rodents to some degree.

### 8.2.2.5 Termite protection

Nylon sheaths, though expensive, offer excellent protection against termites. Nylon resists bite damage and is chemically resistant to the substances excreted by termites.

# 8.2.2.6 Access and jointing chambers

Depending on the actual application, buried joints are typically used in lieu of the access and jointing chambers used in duct installation.

# 8.2.2.7 Direct buried cable joint closures

Basic joint closures for direct buried cables are similar to those used for duct cables but may require additional mechanical protection. The closure may also need to facilitate the distribution of smaller drop cables.

# 8.2.3 Other Deployment techniques

# 8.2.3.1 Other deployments options using rights of way

In addition to traditional cabling routes, other right of way (RoW) access points can also be exploited if they are already in situ. By deploying cables in water and sewage infrastructure, gas pipe systems, canals and waterways as well as other transport systems, savings can be made in time as well as costs.

Cable installations in existing pipe-networks must not intrude on their original function. Restrictions to services during repair and maintenance work have to be reduced to a minimum and coordinated with the network operators.

# 8.2.3.2 Fibre-optic cables in sewer systems

Sewers may be used for access networks as not only do they access almost every corner of the city they also pass potential subscribers. In addition, the utilisation of the sewage system negates the need to seek digging approval and reduces the cost of installation.

Tunnel sizes in the public sewers range from 200mm in diameter to tunnels that are accessible by boat. The majority of public sewer tunnels are between 200mm and 350mm in diameter which is a sufficient cross-section for installation of one or more micro-duct cables.

Various installation schemes are possible depending on the sewer cross-section. One scheme uses steel bracings that fix corrugated steel tubes, which are used to transport the cable, to the inner wall of the smaller sewer tube without the need to drill, mill or cut. This is achieved using a special robot based on a module used for sewer repairs.



### 8.2.3.3 Fibre-optic cables in gas pipes

Gas pipelines can also be used for deploying optical fibre networks without causing major disruption and requiring extensive road works to the community, which is the norm in the case of conventional cut and fill techniques. The fibre network is deployed using a specially developed I/O port that guides the cable into and out of the gas pipe, bypassing the gas valves.

The cable is blown into the gas pipes by means of a stabilized parachute either by using the natural gas flow itself or by using compressed air, depending on the local requirements.

The gas pipeline system provides good protection for the optical fibre cable, being situated well below the street surface and other infrastructures.



Figure valve 101: Gas pipeline section, including I/O ports and the bypassing of a defining one point-of-presence for the fibre-optic cable

### 8.2.3.4 Fibre-optic cables in drinking water pipes

Drinking water pipes can be used for the deployment of fibre-optical cables in a similar manner as for gas pipes.



Figure 102: Cross-section showing fibre installed in a drinking water system

### 8.2.3.5 Canals and waterways

To cross waterways and canals, hardened fibre-optic cables can be deployed without any risk as fibre is insensitive to moisture. A horizontal directional drilling technique can also be used to drill a small tunnel underneath the waterway and pull high tensile strength cables through this tunnel.

### 8.2.3.6 Underground and transport tunnels

Fibre optic cable can be installed in underground tunnels, often alongside power and other data cabling. These are most frequently attached to the wall of the tunnel on hangers. They may be fixed in a similar manner to cables used in sewers.



Two key issues to consider are fire performance and rodent protection.

Should a fire occur in a transport tunnel, the need to evacuate personnel is critical. IEC TR62222 gives guidance on "Fire performance of communication cables in buildings", which may also be applied to transport tunnels if the fire scenarios are similar. This lists potential hazards such as smoke emission, fire propagation, toxic gas and fumes, which can all hinder evacuation.



Figure 103: Cable installation in a train tunnel

Potential users of underground and transport tunnels should ensure that all local regulations for fire safety are considered prior to installation. This would include fixings, connectivity and any other equipment used.

Cables in tunnels can also be subject to rodent attack and therefore may need extra protection in the form of corrugated steel tape, for example

### 8.2.4 Aerial cables

Aerial cables are supported on poles or other tower infrastructures and represent one of the more cost-effective methods of deploying drop cables in the final link to the subscriber. The main benefits are the use of existing pole infrastructure to link subscribers, avoiding the need to dig in roads to bury cables or new ducts. Aerial cables are relatively quick and easy to install, using hardware and practices already familiar to local installers.





Figure 104: Product map for aerial cable

### 8.2.4.1 Load capacity of the pole infrastructure

The poles to which the optical cable is to be attached may already loaded with other cables attached to them. Indeed, the pre-existence of the pole route could be a key reason for the choice of this type of infrastructure. Adding cables will increase the load borne by the poles, therefore it is important to check the condition of the poles and their total load capacity. In some countries, such as the UK, the cables used in aerial cabling have to be designed to break if they come into contact with high vehicles to avoid damage to the poles.

### 8.2.4.2 Types of aerial cable

Types of aerial cable include circular self-supporting (ADSS or similar), Figure-8, wrapped or lashed.

ADSS is useful where electrical isolation is important, for example, on a pole shared with power or data cables requiring a high degree of mechanical protection. This type of cable is also favoured by companies that are familiar with handling copper cables, since similar hardware and installation techniques can be used.

The Figure-8 design allows easy separation of the optical package avoiding contact with the strength member. However, with the ADSS cable design, the strength member bracket is part of the cable.



```
Figure 105: Wrapped aerial cable
```

ADSS cables have the advantage of being independent of the power conductors as together with phase-wrap cables they use special anti-tracking sheath materials when used in high electrical fields.

Lashed or wrapped cable is achieved by attaching conventional cable to a separate catenary member using specialist equipment; this can simplify the choice of cable. Wrap cables use specialised wrapping machines to deploy cables around the earth or phase conductors.

If fibre is deployed directly on a power line this may involve OPGW (optical ground wire) in the earth. OPGW protects the fibres within a single or double layer of steel armour wires. The grade of armour



wire and the cable diameters are normally selected to be compatible with the existing power line infrastructure. OPGW offers excellent reliability but is normally only an option when ground wires also need to be installed or refurbished.

Aerial cables can have similar cable elements and construction to those of duct and buried optical fibre cables described previously. Circular designs, whether self-supporting, wrapped or lashed, may include additional peripheral strength members plus a sheath of polyethylene or special anti-tracking material (when used in high electrical fields). Figure-8 designs combine a circular cable with a high modulus catenary strength member.

If the feeder cable is fed by an aerial route, the cable fibre counts will be similar to the underground version.

It should be noted that all of the above considerations are valid for blown fibre systems deployed on poles or other overhead infrastructures.

Extra consideration needs to be taken of environmental extremes that aerial cables can be subjected to including ice and wind loading. Cable sheath material should also be suitably stabilised against solar radiation. Installation mediums also need to be seriously considered (e.g. poles, power lines, short or long spans, loading capabilities).



Figure 106: Aerial cable selection

In addition, cables are also available with a "unitube" structure.

### 8.2.4.3 Cable pole support hardware

Support hardware can include tension clamps to anchor a cable to a pole or to control a change of pole direction. Intermediate suspension clamps are used to support the cable between the tensioning points. The cable may be anchored with bolts or with preformed helical accessories, which provide a radial and uniform gripping force. Both types of solutions should be carefully selected for the particular diameter and construction of the cable. The cable may need protection if it is routed down the pole, e.g. by covering with a narrow metal plate.



Where there are very long spans or when snow or ice accretion has modified the conductor profile, right angle winds of moderate or high speed may cause aerodynamic lift conditions that can lead to low frequency oscillation of several meters amplitude known as "galloping". Vibration dampers fitted to the line, either close to the supporting structure or incorporated in the bundle spacers, are used to reduce the threat of metal fatigue at suspension and tension fittings.

# 8.2.4.4 Cable tensioning

Aerial cables are installed by pulling them over pre- attached pulleys and then securing them with tension and suspension clamps or preformed helical dead- ends and suspension sets to the poles. Installation is usually carried out in reasonably benign weather conditions with installation loading often being referred to as the everyday stress (EDS). As the weather changes, temperature extremes, ice and wind can all affect the stress on the cable. The cable needs to be strong enough to withstand the extra loading.



Figure 107: Aerial cable installation

Care also needs to be taken to see that installation and subsequent additional sagging, due to ice loading for example,

does not compromise the cable's ground clearance (local authority regulations on road clearance need to be taken into account) or lead to interference with other pole-mounted cables with different coefficients of thermal expansion.

# 8.2.4.5 Aerial cable joint closures

Closures may be mounted on the pole or tower or located in a footway box at the base. In addition to duct closure practice, consideration should be given to providing protection from UV rays and possible illegal shotgun practice, particularly for closures mounted on the pole. The closure may require a function for the distribution of smaller drop cables.

# 8.2.4.6 Other deployment considerations

Aerial products may be more susceptible to vandalism than ducted or buried products. Cables can, for example, be used for illegal shot-gun practice. This is more likely to be low energy impact, due to the large distance from gun to target. If this is a concern, then corrugated steel tape armoring within a Figure-8 construction has been shown to be very effective. For non-metallic designs, thick coverings of aramid yarn, preferably in tape form, can also be effective. OPGW cable probably has the best protection, given that it has steel armour.

# 8.2.4.7 Pre-terminated network builds

Both cables and hardware can be terminated with fibre-optic connectors in the factory. This facilitates factory testing and improved reliability, while reducing the time and the skills needed in the field.

Pre-terminated products are typically used from the primary fibre concentration point in cabinets through to the final subscriber drop enabling the network to be built quickly, passing homes. When a subscriber requests service the final drop requires only a simple plug-and-play cable assembly.

There are several pre-connectorized solution methods that allow termination either inside or outside the product closures, some examples are shown below.





Figure 108:

First row: fully ruggedized, environmentally sealed connectors.

Second row: cable assembly with rugged covers, conventional connector with rugged cover, standard connectors in thin closure.

Third row: Rugged closures that take conventional connectors.



www.ftthcouncil.eu

# 8.3 Duct installation techniques

# 8.3.1 Micro-ducts installed by pulling

The pulling technique to install micro-ducts inside existing sub-ducts or main ducts is effective only for short distance installations and is therefore mostly used in sections where the length is shorter than 100m.

This procedure is very similar to the one for cables. A draw-rope must be put in place or installed ahead of the cable. The micro-duct or micro-duct bundle should be fitted with a swivel allowing free movement as it is installed; in addition a fuse is required which is set at or below the micro-duct's tensile strength.

Ducts can be pulled by hand or using winches and the maximum pulling force should never be exceeded otherwise micro-ducts will get squeezed and damaged.



Figure 109: MD bundles attached to draw-rope



Figure 110: Bundles pulled in main duct

Cable lubricants can be used to reduce friction between the micro-ducts and the sub-ducts thus reducing the tensile load. The minimum bend radius represents the smallest coil of micro-ducts stored within a cable chamber. Suitable pulleys and guidance devices should be used to ensure that the minimum dynamic bend radius is maintained during installation.

# 8.3.2 Micro-ducts installed by air blowing

Air blowing or jetting is a technique used to install micro-ducts into existing sub-ducts. It is a very effective and fast installation process and is used to increase the duct capacity in an FTTH Network. Thin walled micro-ducts are blown in, as a bundle, at the same time. This technology allows deploying of different micro-duct size combinations and brings an added advantage and flexibility to the network.

A special cable-jetting machine with additional equipment for micro-duct blowing and including a compressor is used in the blowing procedure. If blowing into empty sub-ducts, lengths of 1000m or more are achievable. Micro-ducts can be also blown into occupied cable ducts; however, the distances involved are much shorter (about 100-300m) and never predictable.



Micro-ducts should always be under pressure before being blown into sub-ducts as this prevents them from becoming deformed or collapsing due to air pressure from the compressor during the blowing process.

Wherever the empty sub-ducts are located in the ground, the air blowing micro-duct technique is the most effective way to increase duct capacity and flexibility within an FTTH network.



Figure 111: Air blowing of micro-ducts

# 8.3.3 Micro-ducts installed by floating

In some cases bundles of micro-ducts are pulled into ducts (short lengths) and in others they are floated (long lengths). In the latter case the micro-ducts are first filled with water, making the effective weight of the bundle in water almost zero. This allows for very long lengths to be installed.

### 8.3.4 Micro-ducts buried in trench

This is a traditional deployment technique where new duct layers need to be installed. Depending on ground conditions and duct size, a narrow trench is excavated to a safe depth that is in line with local standards and regulations. Rocks and large stones are removed and the base is straightened and levelled. Thick walled ducts are laid and covered by soft soil or sand.

Trenches are excavated manually or using diggers. Other options involve using special machines, called trenchers, which allow simultaneous process of trenching and duct laying in one step. There are many different machines designed for various installation conditions (rural, rocky, urban, city).

Even small micro-ducts with OD 7mm can be direct buried and used for subscriber connections, but these need to be thick-walled and with adequate parameters and impact resistance.



Most FTTH networks use thick walled bundles of micro-ducts that allow quick and easy installation and duct routing.



Figure 112: Ducts laid in open trenches

### 8.3.5 Micro-ducts buried in micro-trench

With the miniaturization of the telecommunication infrastructure, that is micro-ducts and mini-cables, it is now possible to use a low impact trenching technique to carry out all stages of the network construction process in one single day. The process is now less invasive in terms of time and space and means the construction size is considerably smaller than previous trenching technologies.

This type of narrow trench uses machinery with reduced dimensions and is ideal for city/urban conditions as they produce a much smaller quantity of waste material. The working site can be opened and closed on the same day as the trench is cut and earth removed using a suction machine. Typically a trench of <5cm wide and <30cm <40 cm deep is cut and micro-ducts of flat bundles are laid. A technique, approved by the local authority, is used to backfill the trench, returning structural integrity to the roadway. The trench is then sealed flush with the surface.

The main advantages of this technique over traditional cable laying technologies are that they cause minimum disruption to traffic and disturbance to the road. Removing waste and cleaning the road surface after installation is quick and relatively easy.



Figure 113: Micro-trenching deployment technique

For more information and references see Recommendation ITU-T L.83, ITU-T L.48 and ITU-T L.49



# 8.3.6 Micro ducts installed by no-dig technique

## 8.3.6.1 Ducts installed by use of piercing tools

Piercing tools have been an easy-to-use and cost-effective alternative to trenching for the past century. They are ideal for the installation of utilities under existing landscapes and structures. These pneumatic tools are powered by air that creates a compressed hole through compaction of surrounding materials. This allows the network constructer to install underground FTTH lines under buildings, streets and open spaces with little disruption to the surrounding environment. This is a relatively inexpensive non-disruptive technology as the full package comprises of a compressor, air hose and couplers that connect the piercing tool to the air supply.



### Figure 114: Piercing tool deployment technique

### 8.3.6.2 Ducts installed by HDD method

As urban comprise of a wide selection of utilities, excavation alternatives are often limited. By using Horizontal Directional Drilling a variety of duct sizes can be installed from point A to point B over distances only restricted by the product pipe. Existing utilities and surface obstacles can be crossed at a safe distance. With the introduction of the surface HDD technique, various installation depths are now possible incurring roughly the same installation costs. This HDD technique is widely accepted throughout the world and is considered to be one of the least traffic disrupting techniques with minimal surface and neighbourhood disruption.



# 8.3.7 Ducts installed by mole ploughing

With an increasing number of rural areas being connected to FTTH networks, the need for high speed, low cost techniques are high on the agenda to the success of the rural roll-out. Mole ploughing is considered to be the fastest underground installation technique ideally suited to rural conditions. Installation times can be speeded up by adding vibratory movement to the plough blade while at the same time reducing surface disruptions and limiting machine size.





Mole ploughing involves pulling a narrow blade through the ground to cut the soil and make room for direct duct installation. Ducts are then guided through a hollow chute directly behind the blade and multiple ducts can be stacked on top of each other. This technique involves minor surface disruptions and does not require backfilling. The plough path is restored using tyre compaction and the first rain will remove any remaining physical signs of installation. Typical installation speed is approximately 8 to 12 meters per minute.

### 8.3.8 Ducts installed by rockwheel

In some cases, trenching and other forms of underground duct installations are not possible as ground conditions may be too robust, such as rock or concrete. In this case, a rockwheel, comprising of a rotary tooth, can be used to cut narrow and deep trenches through extreme ground conditions. This tool causes minimum ground displacement at the side of the trench. Typical excavation speed is approximately 1 to 3 meters per minute.







# 8.3.9 Aerial micro-ducts

Aerial micro-duct applications can bring benefits in terms of quick and inexpensive installation methods that do not involve digging. This technology is cost-effective especially in areas with existing aerial infrastructure (poles with cable TV or telephone lines). Aerial micro-ducts are ideal for short subscriber end connections involving pole spans of less than 50m.

Micro-ducts can be designed in a Figure-8nshape that is then compatible with standard aerial accessories used with aerial cables. (See Chapter 8.2.4 Aerial cable).



### Figure 115: Aerial micro-ducts

### 8.3.10 Connection of micro-ducts

Individual sections of single micro-ducts can be joined together using special micro-connectors. For thick walled micro-ducts that are buried in the ground, the special DB connectors should always be used.

This very limited selection of accessories is also suitable for flat-bundles, making it a very costeffective solution.



However, branch or duct management boxes are required for loose-bundles to protect the integrity and safety of the network design.





Figure 116: Branching components for loose bundles

At all access points and buildings, gas and water stop connectors and end-caps are used for safety purposes.



Figure 117: Gas blocks and bundle sealings protecting the duct network integrity and safety



# 9 Fibre and Fibre Management

# 9.1 Choice of FTTH optical fibre

Several types of optical fibre are available. Future proofed FTTH schemes are usually based on single-mode fibre; however multimode fibre may also be used in specific situations. The choice of fibre will depend on a number of considerations. Those listed below are not exhaustive; other factors may need to be considered on a case-by-case basis.

- **Network architecture** The choice of network architecture affects the data rate that must be delivered by the fibre and the available optical power budget of the network. Both factors affect the choice of fibre.
- Size of the network Network size can refer to the number of premises served by the network. However, in this context it refers to the physical distance across the network. The available power budget will determine how far the POP can be located from the subscriber. Power budgets are influenced by all the components in the optical path including the fibre.
- The existing network fibre type If an existing network is expanded, the optical fibre in the new network segments must be compatible with the fibre in the existing network.
- **Expected lifetime** FTTH networks are designed with a lifespan of at least 30 years. Therefore, it is imperative that investments to the FTTH infrastructure are suitable for future needs. Changes to the choice of fibre during the expected lifespan of the FTTH network are not a realistic option.

# 9.1.1 Optical fibre basics

Optical fibre is effectively a "light pipe" carrying pulses of light generated by lasers or other optical sources to a receiving sensor (detector). Transmission of light in an optical fibre can be achieved over considerable distances, supporting high-speed applications unsustainable by today's copper-based networks. Conceived in the 1960s, optical fibre has undergone major development and, as it is now standardised, has become a reliable and proven foundation of today's modern telecommunication transmission systems.

Fibre is manufactured from high purity silica. Initially formed into glass-like rods, they are drawn into fine hair-like strands and covered with a thin protective plastic coating.



Fibre consists of a core, cladding and outer coating. Light pulses are launched into the core region. The surrounding cladding keeps the light travelling down the core and prevents it from leaking out and an outer coating, usually made of a polymer, is applied during the drawing process.



Fibres are subsequently packaged in various cable configurations before installation. Details relating to the cables are available in other chapters of this handbook.

Whilst there are many different fibre types, this document concentrates on fibre for FTTH applications.

The fibre core can be designed in various geometrical sizes which depending how the light pulse travels, produces different optical performances.

A number of parameters determine how efficiently light pulses are transmitted down the fibre. The two main parameters are attenuation and dispersion.

**Attenuation** is the reduction of optical power over distance. Even with the extremely pure materials used to manufacture the fibre core and cladding, power is lost over distance by scattering and absorption within the fibre. Fibre attenuation limits the distance light pulses can travel and still remain detectable. Attenuation is expressed in decibels per kilometre (dB/km) at a given wavelength or range of wavelengths, also known as the attenuation coefficient or attenuation rate.

**Dispersion** can broadly be described as the amount of distortion or spreading of a pulse during transmission. If pulses spread out too far, the detector at the other end of the fibre is not able to distinguish one pulse from the next, causing loss of information. Chromatic dispersion occurs in all fibres and is caused by the various colours of light (components of a light pulse) travelling at slightly different speeds along the fibre. Dispersion is inversely related to bandwidth, which is the information carrying capacity.

There are many other parameters, which affect fibre transmission performance. Further information can be found in IEC 60793 series of specifications.

### 9.1.2 Single-mode fibre

Single-mode fibre has a small core size ( $<10\mu$ m) that supports only one mode (ray pattern) of light. The majority of the world's fibre systems are based on this type of fibre.

Single-mode fibre provides the lowest optical attenuation loss and the highest bandwidth transmission carrying capacity of all the fibre types. Single-mode fibre incurs higher equipment cost than multimode fibre systems.

For FTTH applications, the ITUT G.652 recommendations for single-mode fibre are sufficient to cover the needs of most networks.





#### Multimode fibre



Figure 119: Light paths inside fibre

For quite some time now a newer type of single-mode fibre has been available on the market that reduces optical losses at tight bends. These fibres are standardized in the ITU-T G.657 recommendation. The in-force version, edition 3, was published in October 2012 and can be downloaded at: <u>http://www.itu.int/rec/T-REC-G.657-201210-l/en</u>.



# 9.1.3 Graded-index multimode fibres

Multimode fibres have a larger core size (50 or 62.5µm) that supports many modes (different light paths through the core). Depending on the launch characteristics, the input pulse power is divided over all or some of the modes. The different propagation speed of individual modes (modal dispersion) can be minimised by adequate fibre design.

Multimode fibre can operate with cheaper light sources and connectors; however the fibre itself is more expensive than single-mode. Multimode fibre is used extensively in data centres and sometimes used in campus networks. It has lower bandwidth capability and restricted transmission distance.

The ISO/IEC11801 specification describes the data rate and reach of multimode fibre grades, referred to as OM1, OM2, OM3 and OM4.

### 9.1.4 Bend insensitive fibre

When cabling inside buildings, many areas prove difficult for conventional fibres resulting in possible poor optical performance. To avoid this very careful and skilled installation practices are required or special fibre protection is needed with ducts and cable designs. However, for some time fibre types with the ITU-T G.657 standard have been widely available allowing fibre-optic cables to be installed as easily as conventional copper cables. The fibres inside these cables, which are termed "bend-insensitive", are capable of operating at a bend radius down to 7.5mm, with some fibres fully compliant down to 5mm.

The recommended G657 describes two categories of single-mode fibres, both are suitable for use in access networks. Both categories A and B contain sub-categories which differ in macro-bending loss thus the difference between these fibres is in the permissible bending radius:

**Category A** contains the recommended attributes and values needed to support optimized access network installation with respect to macro-bending loss. However the recommended values for the other attributes still remains within the range recommended in G.652.D and emphasizes backward compatibility with G.652.D fibres. This category has three sub-categories with different macro-bending requirements: G.657.A1, G.657.A2 and the recently proposed G.657.A3 fibre.

| Bend radius | G.657.A1     | G.657.A2    | G.657.A3*    |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| 10 mm       | 0.75 dB/turn | 0.1 dB/turn |              |
| 7.5 mm      |              | 0.5 dB/turn |              |
| 5 mm        |              |             | 0.15 dB/turn |

Loss specified @ 1550nm; G.657.A3 is not finalized.

**Category B** contains the recommended attributes and values needed to support very low bending radii particularly applicable to in-building installations. For the mode-field diameter and chromatic dispersion coefficients, the recommended range of value might be outside the range of values recommended in ITU-T G.652 and thus NOT necessarily backward compatible. This category has two sub-categories with different macro-bending requirements: G.657.B2 fibre and G.657.B3 fibre.



| Bend radius | G.657.B2    | G.657.B3     |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| 10 mm       | 0.1 dB/turn | 0.03 dB/turn |
| 7.5 mm      | 0.5 dB/turn | 0.08 dB/turn |
| 5 mm        |             | 0.15 dB/turn |

Loss specified @ 1550nm

# 9.2 Fibre optic termination

All outdoor cables used in any fibre-optic network deployments are terminated at both ends. This section covers issues related to the large fibre counts termination and management in the POPs, Access Nodes and street cabinets where the challenge of managing large fibre counts is met.

# 9.2.1 Optical Distribution Frames

An optical distribution frame (ODF) is the point where all fibres from the outdoor cables become available to interface with the active transmission equipment. ODFs are usually situated in the POPs, bringing together several hundred to several thousand fibres. A single ODF cabinet can connect up to 4,000 fibres using SFF connectivity. Large POPs will use multiple ODF cabinets.

Typically, outdoor cables are terminated before the ODFs and transfer cables are used, though in some cases, the ODF is used as well for outdoor cable termination. In either case, to access each fibre of the outdoor cable, a connectorized fibre pigtail is spliced to each individual fibre end.

In most cases, the ODF offers flexible patching between active equipment ports and the outdoor cable termination. Fibres are identified and typically stored in physically separated housings or shelves to simplify fibre maintenance and to protect or avoid accidental interference to fibre circuits.



Figure 120: Splicing work on an ODF





Figure 121: Active and Passive ODF's in a POP

Figure 122: Small POP

Figure 123: Example of ODF units

Internal optical cables are run between the ODFs and the active equipment. A fibre-guiding platform (fibre containment) is built between the active equipment and the ODF cabinets and provides a protected path for the internal cables to run between the two locations. Unlike conventional metal trays or baskets, fibre containment encapsulates the fibre with a robust fire-resistant material that prolongs the recovery time in disaster situations. Cables can be pulled quickly and easily through the fibre containment system and optical performance is optimised through comprehensive bend-limitation and lateral support. This ability to deploy cables quickly will improve the planning and procurement process when different cable lengths need to be added to the network.



Figure 124: Examples of overhead fibre containment

An uninterruptible power supply (UPS) provides emergency power back-up if an external power supply fails. The Access Node may also require a second diverse external power supply, which may form part of local and statutory requirements (provision of emergency services). UPS modules are available in various sizes depending on the power requirement to be backed-up.



Suitable air conditioning equipment is needed to maintain the temperature of the active equipment within environmental operating limits. The size and capacity of the unit will depend on the size of the room to be served.



Figure 125: Uninterruptible power supply



Figure 126: Air-conditioning unit

### 9.2.2 Street cabinets

Street cabinets are metal or plastic enclosures, which serve as distribution/access points between the distribution fibre and the drop fibre to the subscriber. These are usually located to allow for relatively easy and rapid access to the fibre circuits and are capable of handling larger capacities than fibre joint closures. Access/distribution points often serve from 24 to 96 subscribers, whilst compact pedestal cabinet alternatives typically serve 1 to 24 subscribers.

Cabinets can also be used as above-ground access points for fibre closures. Where these are mounted inside the street cabinet, an easy-to-remove method is needed to enable cleaning and provide efficient access.

Street cabinets are often used to store PON splitters, which also require flexible connectivity to subscriber-dedicated fibres. Street cabinets are also used in point-to-point network architectures.

An important factor in the roll-out of new networks is speed. Cabinets are now being provided pre-stubbed and terminated. These cabinets are assembled in the factory and tested prior to delivery. They have a cable stub that is run back to the next closure offering a patch panel for simple plug-and-play connectivity. This provides faster installation and reduces the incidence of installation faults. Pre-stubbed and terminated cabinets can be combined with plug-and-play PON splitters which can be installed as and when required without the need for further field splicing.



Figure 127: Typical street cabinet



Figure 128: Pre-stubbed and terminated cabinet



Climate controlled street cabinets can provide a flexible solution for compact ODF systems. These cabinets can be equipped with the same security measures and uninterrupted power supply as in largescale access nodes.



Figure 129: Combined POP/ODF with climate control

# 9.2.3 Underground Distribution Systems

Underground distribution systems serve a similar function to street cabinets but are located below ground level. Such solutions typically offer connectivity of electricity and/or fibre optic cables embedded in an underground chamber which is flood-proof thus guaranteeing continuous operation even in a severe flooding situation.

Underground distribution systems suit urban landscapes in the age of contemporary marketplace design and urban renewal. City planners can rethink their designs without the need to consider street cabinets; an attractive solution for historical urban areas

Underground distribution systems provide the unique advantage of being invisible to the general public, thus unaffected by vandalism and defacement. The communication equipment is safely stored in a technology compartment that is located underground and closed at street level with ductile iron or concreted covers. For enhanced security, access chamber covers are typically also locked.

Unlike outdoor distribution cabinets that can be accident-prone in some exposed locations (car/trucks reversing into them or running over them), traffic can pass unhindered above these underground solutions. In most cases, the general public is unaware of the access chambers. Therefore underground distribution systems are ideally suited to protect vital FTTx infrastructure from public view - out of sight - out of potential targeted attacks.

Gas spring-assisted opening mechanisms ensure that even heavy equipment placed inside the technology compartment can be easily extracted and opened for routine inspection and maintenance. To prevent valuable communications equipment being exposed to the constant rattle and shaking caused by overhead traffic, technology compartments are by design decoupled from the access chamber. Concreted or cobble stoned covers can be provided with the same outward design to blend into the surrounding area and further integrate into the overall cityscape design.

Underground distribution systems operate on the "diving bell" principle. This requires the underground technology compartment to be gas and water tight (from all sides, excluding the underside) to prevent air from escaping in case of rising water levels in the access chamber. The underground compartment prevents water ingress without actually being classified as IP68. Since rising water levels in an access chamber trying to enter the underground compartment cannot compress the trapped air within, the equipment remains dry. The principle function is well documented and field proven. A buoyancy floatation lock prevents floatation of the technology compartment in a water-flooding situation.





Figure 130: Underground Distribution System

# 9.2.4 Closure Storage in Access Chambers

For easy retraction (and storage) of fibre optic splice closures in access chambers during installation, inspection and maintenance, a telescopic arm can be deployed to support the retraction process. The closure is lifted out of its retraced position and locked into a position suitable for easy access. Depending on the access chamber design, a number of solutions allow for the closing of some of the (multiple) access chamber covers to improve safety on site. The closure can be locked into working position to help maintain a safe working environment for the splicing and inspection process. Telescopic arms that facilitate the rotation of the closure away from the access chamber further improve safety on site.





# 9.3 Connectors, Patch cords and Pigtails

After the termination of OSP cables, individual fibres need to be accessible for distribution and/or connection to active equipment. The transformation of cable bundles in individual manageable circuits is achieved by splicing each individual fibre from the OSP to one end terminated flexible cable called pigtail. Additional distribution and/or connection between these fibres to/from the active equipment require two end connector terminated patch cables. These cables are generally available in two different constructions:

- Pigtails are 900µm semi-tight buffer with strip ability ≥ 1.5m and a typical length of 2.5m
- Patch cords are 1.6—3.0mm LSZH jacket jumper cable having aramid yarns as strength members

In contrast to their electromechanical counterparts, there is no differentiation between plug and jack with the fibre-optic connectors. Fibre-optic connectors contain a ferrule to accommodate and for the exact positioning of the fibre end, and are attached to one another via a coupler with a sleeve. A complete plug-in connection consists of the combination connector/coupler/connector. The two ferrules, with the fibre ends, must connect as precisely as possible inside the connection to hinder the loss of light energy or its reflection (return loss). Determining factors are the geometric orientation and workmanship of the fibre in the connector.

The extremely small core diameters of the optical fibres demand the highest mechanical and optical precision. With tolerances of 0.5 to 0.10µm (much smaller than a grain of dust), manufacturers operate at the limits of precision engineering, accessing through their processes the realm of micro systems technology. Compromises are not an option.

Core diameters of 8.3µm for single-mode or 50/62.5µm for multi-mode fibres and ferrules with 2.5mm or 1.25mm diameter make a visual inspection of the connector impossible. Naturally it is possible to determine if a connector is correctly snapped in and locked however, for all other characteristics – the "intrinsic values" – for example insertion loss, return loss, or mechanical stability, users must be able to rely on the manufacturer's data.

# 9.3.1 Common connector types

### ST connector (also known as BFOC, IEC 61754-2)

Connectors with bayonet lock were the first PC connectors (1996) and, coupled with this design and their extremely robust design, they can still be found world-wide in LAN networks (primarily industrial). ST is the designation for "straight" type.



Figure 131: ST connector



Figure 132: ST adaptor/coupler



DIN/LSA ([German: fibre-optic cable connector], version A, IEC 61754-3, DIN 47256)

These compact connectors with threaded couplers are commonly predominately used in Germanspeaking countries.

SC connector (IEC 61751-4)

This type of connector with a quadratic design and push/pull system is recommended for new installations (SC stands for Square Connector or Subscriber Connector). The compact design of the SC allows a high packing density and can be combined with duplex and multiplex connections.

Although it is one of the oldest connectors, due to its excellent properties, the SC continues to gain in popularity and to this day. SC is still the most popular WAN connector world-wide, mainly due to its excellent optical properties. SC is also used widely in the duplex version, particularly in local area networks.



### MU connector (IEC 61754-6)

Arguably the first small form connector, it is based on a 1.25 mm ferrule and its appearance and functionality is similar to the SC but is half the size.

### MTP / MPO (IEC 61754-7)

The MPO (multi patch push-on) is based on a plastic ferrule capable of holding up to 72 fibres in one connector. The connector is distinctive due to its compact design and simple handling.



Figure 135: MPO Connector



FC (Fibre Connector, IEC 61753-13)

A first generation connector that is robust and proven. This is the first true WAN connector still in use in millions of applications. However, due to its threaded coupling it is not optimal in cramped circumstances, and therefore not popular in modern racks with high packing density.



### E-2000™ (LSH, IEC 61753-15)

The LSH has an integrated protective shutter protects against dust and scratches as well as laser beams. The connector is fitted with a locking latch retention mechanism that is both colour and mechanically coded and is the first connector to achieve Grade A\* performance.



### MT-RJ (IEC 61751-18)

The MT-RJ connector is commonly used in LANs and has a similar appearance to that of the RJ45 connector found in copper networks. It is used as a duplex connector.

### LC connector (IEC 61754-20)

Developed by the company Lucent (LC stands for Lucent Connector), it is part of the new generation of compact connectors. The construction is based on a ferrule with a 1.25 mm diameter. The duplex coupler is the same size of an SC coupler (SC footprint) thus allowing for very high packing density and making it attractive for use in data centres and Central Offices.







Figure 140: LC duplex connector

Figure 141: LC duplex adaptor/coupler

F-SMA: (Sub-Miniature Assembly, IEC 61754-22)

Threaded connector without physical contact between ferrules. It was the first standardized fibreoptic connector, but today is only used for PFC/HCS or POF.

BLINK (IEC 61754-29)

This is a small form connector with the same ferrule (1.25mm) as LC and is designed and bestsuited for the connection between the OTO (Optical Telecommunication Outlet) and the ONT or CPE. The BLINK has integrated automatic shutters that protect against dust and scratches as well as laser beams. Furthermore it has an automatic self-release mechanism to prevent damage of the OTO or the ONT/CPE.



Figure 142: BLINK connector



Figure 143: BLINK to LC hybrid adaptor/coupler



Figure 144: BLINK to CLIK hybrid adaptor in Keystone- format

LX.5 (IEC 61754-23)

Similar in size to the LC with the same 1.25mm ferrule, it has the same features as the E-2000 connector. The duplex coupler is the same size as an SC coupler (SC footprint).







Figure 146: LX.5 adaptor/coupler



### SC-RJ (IEC 61754-24)

As the name already indicates, this product is based on the RJ45 format. Two SC's form a unit the size of an RJ45. This is equivalent to the SFF (Small Form Factor). 2.5 mm ferrule sleeve technology, as this is more robust and reliable than the 1.25 mm ferrule. The SC-RJ impresses not only with its compact design, but also its optical and mechanical performance. Seen as an all-rounder, its versatility means it can be used in many areas, from Grade A\* to M, from single mode to POF, from WAN to LAN, from laboratory to outdoors.



Figure 147: SC-RJ connector



Figure 148: SC-RJ adaptor/coupler

### 9.3.2 Return loss

The return loss, RL, measures the portion of light that is reflected back to the source at the junction, expressed in decibels (dB). The higher the RL, the lower the reflection. Typical RL values lie between 35 and 50 dB for PC, 60 to 90 dB for APC and 20 to 40 dB for multimode fibres.

In the early days of fibre-optic plug-in connectors, the abutting end faces were polished to an angle of 90° in relation to the fibre axis, while current standards require PC (Physical Contact) polishing or APC (Angled Physical Contact) polishing. The term HRL (High Return Loss) is frequently used but has the same meaning as APC.



PC (Physical Contact)





In PC polishing, the ferrule is polished to a convex end to ensure the fibre cores touch at their highest point. This reduces the occurrence of reflections at the junction.

A further improvement in return loss is achieved by using the APC polishing technique. Here, the convex end surfaces of the ferrules are polished to an angle (8°) relative to the fibre axis. SC connectors are also sold with a 9° angle. They possess IL and RL values identical to 8° versions, and for this reason they have not established themselves worldwide.



### Return loss due to reflection

As a result of the junction between the two fibres, eccentricities, scratches, and contaminants, portions of light or modes are diffused at the coupling point (red arrow). A well-polished and cleaned PC connector exhibits approx. 14.7 dB RL against air and 45-50 dB when plugged in.

With the APC connector, although the modes are reflected, due to the 8° or 9° angle they occur at an angle greater than the acceptance angle for total internal reflection. The advantage is that these modes are not carried back in the fibre.

A good APC connector exhibits at least 55 dB RL against air and 60-90 dB when plugged in.

By comparison, the fibre itself has an intrinsic return loss of 79.4dB at 1310nm, 81.7dB at 1550nm and 82.2dB at 1625nm (all values at a pulse length of 1 ns).



For losses at the connection of two optical fibres, a distinction is generally made between "intrinsic" losses due to the fibre and "extrinsic" losses resulting from the connection. Losses due to the fibre occur, for example, when different core radii are used, with different refractive indexes or eccentricities of the core. Losses resulting from the connection occur due to various reasons including reflections and roughness on the end faces, pointing errors or radial misalignment. The following notes and information refer to connection losses; not considered are the influence of fibre tolerances and fibre-optic cable quality.

The technical transmission grade of a fibre-optic plug-in connector is primarily determined by two characteristics: the insertion loss IL and the return loss RL. The smaller the IL the larger the RL value, thus the better the signal transmission in a plug-in connection.

Insertion loss is a measurement of the losses that occur at the connection point. It is calculated from the ratio of the light power in the fibre cores before (PIN) and after (POUT) the connection and is expressed in decibels.

The smaller the value, the lower the signal losses. Typical IL values lie in the range from 0.1 to 0.5dB.

In the marketplace, specifications with the designation -dB and +dB are also used; for example, a patch cable could be specified with -0.1 dB or 0.1 dB. In both cases, the physical loss is identical.

### 9.3.4 Extrinsic losses

Less light energy is lost if the fibre cores meet more precisely. For this reason, high-precision fibres are glued in precise ceramic ferrules. The connection-dependent extrinsic losses result from reflections, roughness on the end faces, angular errors (angular pointing error) or radial misalignment (concentricity). Reflections and roughness play a subordinate role in the loss. Primary causes are misalignment and pointing errors.









The ferrule hole must be larger than the fibre to allow the fibre to be inserted. As a result, the fibre always has a certain clearance in the core. This causes additional concentricity, but also a pointing error.

### Angular pointing error:

The so-called angular pointing error should be <0.3Greater pointing errors cause stress on the fibre that can lead to fibre breakage.

### **Concentricity:**

According to IEC 61755-3-1+2, the maximum concentricity may be, depending on grade, between 1.0  $\mu$ m and 1.6  $\mu$ m (measured from the fibre axis to the ferrule exterior diameter).

If two ferrules or plug-in connectors are plugged together without taking additional steps, there is a risk that the concentricity and angular pointing error together increase the loss.

To minimise insertion loss of plug-in connections, the radial misalignment of two connected fibres must be as small as possible. This is achieved by defining a quadrant of the ferrule in which the core must lie. Connectors which can be tuned make it possible to turn the ferrule in 60° or 90° steps. If two tuned connectors are connected to each other, the deviation of the core position is reduced in the ferrule, which leads to significantly improved performance compared with untuned connectors.

An angular pointing error >0.3° should be avoided to prevent stress on the fibre. Stress loads reduce the service life and optical properties of the fibre – particularly BER (Bit Error Rate), modal noise and high-power tolerance.

Precision work, first-class materials and total quality control are required for the manufacture of reliable high-performance fibre-optic plug-in connectors. Stresses on the tiny components of a fibre-optic connector are highly demanding. Products should be constructed for a service life of 200,000 to 250,000 hours, or 25 years. For patching, the connectors must also withstand high sheering forces and should easily withstand 500 to 1000 plug cycles.

# 9.4 Fibre optic splicing

Two technologies are common for splicing fibre to fibre: fusions and mechanical.

### 9.4.1 Fusion splicing

Fusion splicing requires the creation of an electric arc between two electrodes. The two cleaved fibres are brought together in the arc, so that both ends melt together.







Figure 149: Fusion arc in

Figure 150: Splice complete

The optical losses of the splice can vary from splicer to splicer, depending on the alignment mechanism. Splicing machines with core alignment match up the light-guiding channel of the fibre (9 $\mu$ m core) to one another. These machines produce splices with losses typically in the region of <0.05dB.



Figure 151: Fusion splice machines

Some splice machines (smaller handheld versions, for example) align the cladding (125  $\mu$ m) of a fibre instead of the cores that transport the light. This is a cheaper technology, but can increase the occurrence of errors as the dimensional tolerances of the cladding are larger. Typical insertion loss values for these splice machines are better than 0.1dB.

# 9.4.2 Mechanical splicing

Mechanical splicing is based on the mechanical alignment of two cleaved fibre ends to allow a free flow of light. This also applies to terminating fibres onto connectors. To facilitate light coupling between the fibres, an index matching gel is often used. Manufacturers have different methods to terminate the fibres in the mechanical splice.

Mechanical splices can be angle cleaved or non-angle cleaved, but the former has a higher return loss. The insertion loss of a mechanical splice is typically <0.5 dB.





### Figure 152: Mechanical splicers

# 9.5 Optical splitters

Two technologies are common in the world of passive splitters: fused biconic taper and planar waveguide splitters.

# 9.5.1 Fused bi-conic taper



- FBT splitters are made by fusing together two wrapped fibres.
- Common production process.
- Proven technology for OSP environments.
- Monolithic devices are available up to 1x4 split ratio.
- Split ratios greater than 1x4 are built by cascading 1x2, 1x3 or 1x4 splitters.
- Split ratios from 1x2 up to 1x32 and higher (dual input possible as well).
- Higher split ratios have typically higher IL (Insertion Loss) and lower uniformity compared with planar technology.



# 9.5.2 Planar splitter



- optical paths are buried inside the silica chip
- available from 1x4 to 1x32 split ratios and higher, dual input possible also
- only symmetrical splitters available as standard devices compact compared with FBT at higher split ratios (no cascading)
- better insertion loss and uniformity at higher wavelengths compared with FBT over all bands
- better for longer wavelength, broader spectrum

# 9.6 Quality grades for fibre-optic connectors

Approved in March 2007, the standard IEC 61753 describes application-oriented grades for connection elements in fibre-optic networks (see table below). Clear, grade identification and necessary IEC test method aids planners as well as those responsible for networks during the selection of plug-in connectors, patch cables, and pigtails. Data centre operators and telecommunications companies can determine the fibre-optic assortment according to usage and make faster and more informed purchasing decisions. This also avoids purchasing of over-specified products that do not deliver the expected loss values claimed.

The current requirements list is based in part on IEC 61753 and defines loss values. Additionally, the standards IEC 61755-3-1 and IEC 61755-3-2 play a role as they define geometric parameters for fibre-optic plug-in connectors. The interaction of these three standards forms the basis for the compatibility of fibre-optic plug-in connectors from different manufacturers and for the determination of manufacturer-neutral loss values.


| Attenuation Grade | Attenuation random mated IEC 61300-3-34         |   |  |  |  |
|-------------------|---|---|--|--|--|
| Grade A*          | ≤ 0.07 dB mean                                  | $\leq$ 0.15 dB max. for >97% of samples |  |  |  |
| Grade B           | ≤ 0.12 dB mean                                  | $\leq$ 0.25 dB max. for >97% of samples |  |  |  |
| Grade C           | ≤ 0.25 dB mean                                  | $\leq$ 0.50 dB max. for >97% of samples |  |  |  |
| Grade D           | ≤ 0.50 dB mean                                  | ≤ 1.00 dB max. for >97% of samples      |  |  |  |
|                   |   |   |  |  |  |
| Return Loss Grade | Return Loss Random mated IEC 61300-3-6          |   |  |  |  |
| Grade 1           | $\geq$ 60 dB (mated) and $\geq$ 55 dB (unmated) |   |  |  |  |
| Grade 2           | ≥ 45 dB   |   |  |  |  |
| Grade 3           | ≥ 35 dB   |   |  |  |  |
| Grade 4           | ≥ 26 dB   |   |  |  |  |

Table: Overview of performance criteria of the new performance grades for data transmission in fibre- optic connections according to IEC 61753. The definition of Grade A\* has not yet been finalised. Criteria for multi-mode fibres are still under discussion.

Theoretically, the attenuation grades ( $A^*$  to D) can be mixed at will with return loss grades. However, a Grade  $A^*/4$  would not make sense, and for this reason the following common combinations have been established:

|         | Grade A*     | Grade B      | Grade C      | Grade D |
|---------|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------|
| Grade 1 | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | ×       |
| Grade 2 | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | (✓)     |
| Grade 3 | ×            | ×            | ×            | ✓       |
| Grade 4 | ×            | ×            | ×            | (✓)     |

# 9.7 Each-to-each values

The loss values specified in IEC 61753 are also referred to as each-to-each (or random mate) values. Each-to-each means that the loss of a connector to a reference connector is not measured, but used in testing situations with, every connector in a lot being connected to every other connector and the loss of the combination connector/sleeve/connector is measured.

The rational for this model is: loss values generated according to the IEC specification for random connector pairs is much closer to actual operating conditions than manufacturer-specified loss values that, in many cases, are based upon a best-case measurement under laboratory conditions. In best-case measurements, the connector is measured against a reference cable. Here, the reference cable is selected so the measurement in the factory results in the lowest possible value (lower than can be achieved later in practice).



# 9.8 Mean values

A new development resulting from grades is the demand for mean values. This is an optimal basis for the calculation of link attenuation and is particularly relevant in large networks. Previously it was necessary to calculate attenuation using the maximum value, which was already noted as having low reliability for each-to-each connections. Now the stated mean values can be used for calculation and in this way, every planner uses the proper class to meet existing needs, thus guaranteeing an optimal cost/benefit ratio. Example:

| Specification    | Each-to-each values  | Budget for 10<br>connections             |
|------------------|--|--|
| 0.1 dB connector | approx. 0.2 dB (possibly higher if different<br>manufacturers are combined or unadjusted<br>connectors are used) | approx. 2 dB, unclear range of tolerance |
| Grade C          | Mean ≤0.25 dB, Max ≤0.50 dB  | ≤2.5 dB                                  |
| Grade B          | Mean ≤0.12 dB, Max ≤0.25 dB  | ≤1.2 dB                                  |
| Grade A*         | Mean ≤0.07 dB, Max ≤0.12 dB  | ≤0.70 dB                                 |

The causes of loss are known to the IEC standardisation committees. For this reason they defined the parameters H, F, and G presented below:





#### Grades B and C

#### Grade D

| IEC 6 | IEC 61755-3-1 (PC connector, 2.5 mm ferrule) |             |              |         |         |         |            |
|-------|--|-------------|--------------|---------|---------|---------|------------|
|       | Grade B                                      |             | Gra          | Grade C |         | Grade D |            |
|       | Minimum                                      | Maximum     | Minimum      | Maximum | Minimum | Maximum | Remarks    |
| H:    | 0  | 50          | 0            | 50      | 0 (®NA) | 0 (®NA) | Degrees    |
| F:    | 0  | 0.0012      | 0            | 0.0015  | 0       | 0.0016  | Radius, mm |
| G:    | 0  | 0.0003      | 0            | 0.0003  | 0 (®NA) | 0 (®NA) | Radius, mm |
|       |  |             |              |         |         |         |            |
| IEC 6 | 61755-3-2 (AF                                | C connector | , 2.5 mm fer | rule)   |         |         |            |
|       | Gra  | de B        | Gra          | de C    | Grade D |         |            |
|       | Minimum                                      | Maximum     | Minimum      | Maximum | Minimum | Maximum | Remarks    |
| H:    | 0  | 50          | 0            | 50      | NA      | NA      | Degrees    |
| F:    | 0  | 0.0010      | 0            | 0.0014  | 0       | 0.0015  | Radius, mm |
| G:    | 0  | 0.0003      | 0            | 0.0003  | NA      | NA      | Radius, mm |

Geometric parameters for fibre-optic connectors according to IEC 61755-3-1 and 61755-3-2

## 9.9 Manufacturer specifications and real usage conditions

The following is taken from real life and demonstrates why the use of grades is so important: A network operator uses patch cable with an insertion loss specified by the manufacturer of 0.1 dB. During measurements on the ground, the patch cables "suddenly" exhibit values between 0.2 and 0.3 dB. Where do these, often occurring real life, serious discrepancies originate?

The manufacturer had determined the value found in the product specification in a best-case environment. Used in this scenario are low-loss reference or master cables to achieve the lowest possible value during insertion loss measurement. However, if the patch cables are connected each- to-each, this value can no longer be reproduced and thus it lies significantly above the best-case measurement result.

This unrealistic, but unfortunately still common, measurement method has consequences: Unaware of the precise measurement conditions for manufacturer's specifications, network planners often purchase expensive and over-specified products only to discover that the calculated insertion loss budget cannot be met. Delays in initial start-up and expensive replacement purchases are unavoidable.

In this context, it is important to note the following: The installation of fibre-optics and the handling of connectors in daily practice require special expertise and an extensive training. Therefore it is recommended the appropriate certification of the specialist firm or personnel be considered.



# 10 Operations and Maintenance

This chapter provides an overview of the operational and maintenance aspects of an FTTH network infrastructure. While each FTTH network design is different, operation and maintenance best practices' consideration remains a common requirement.

Firstly, three key aspects for operational efficiency in FTTH networks will be discussed: the correct strategic decisions, well-maintained network documentation and finally, standardised process management. Furthermore deployment and maintenance guidelines will be mentioned.

# **10.1 Operational Efficiency in FTTH Networks**

The business case for FTTH is heavily dependent on the upfront cost of building the network. As a result, much attention has been focused on the need for efficiency in strategic network planning and technical deployment methods with the aim of reducing the initial capital expenditure (CAPEX) requirement. However, network operation and maintenance should not be overlooked. The build phase is only the beginning; once the network is operational, the main challenge will be to keep it that way.

This section addresses the subject of how to optimise FTTH operations and maintenance (OAM) processes. The aim is to minimise operational costs (OPEX) by reducing the complexity of the OAM processes and decreasing the amount of staff time that must be spent on them. The objective is to see that the network operates reliably, but is able to recover quickly from any outages, and changes can be managed easily. The impact of OAM processes on the cost of upgrading the network in the future will also be considered.

It is possible to identify several topics that are of particular relevance to FTTH operators. Based on their experience in the real world, network operators have provided more detail on the questions that have an impact on operational efficiency, such as:

- How should the network be designed so that it is easier to manage changes and upgrades?
- How can faults be identified and located quickly? (Tip: good network documentation is key.)
- How can operations and maintenance procedures and logistics be improved?

The first of these questions addresses the importance of forward thinking and the impact of the strategic decisions made at the outset of the project. The second area focuses on the need to create and maintain high-quality network documentation. The third part is concerned with using process management to standardise and streamline operations and logistics processes and thus improve service performance. The aim is not simply to find a solution to a one-off technical problem, but to manage the normal, day-to-day maintenance tasks so that they can be carried out efficiently.

## 10.1.1 Make the Right Strategic Decisions

Even before the network has been built, decisions are made that will determine important aspects of its future operations and maintenance. Therefore, the best basis for the efficient operation and maintenance is a well-considered and consistent network strategy from the outset. This strategy should cover all aspects of how the network will be built and extended, including the network topology and architecture, the design rules and the choice of equipment. This is explained in detail in Chapter 3.



During the strategic planning phase, the network operator decides how the network will be built. There is far more to consider than just the initial investment. Although it is important to reduce the CAPEX because of its impact on the viability of the business case, the OPEX should also be carefully considered. For every deployment option the operator should evaluate how this would affect the cost of future operation and maintenance processes, such as subscriber provisioning, network maintenance and repair, and how easily the network could be extended and upgraded.

Please note that this section focuses on the technical aspects of the deployment strategy only. The dependencies of the ownership and financial models, which also influence strategic decisions, are beyond the scope and will not be taken into account.

The following three aspects will be investigated:

- network deployment strategy
- future migration strategy
- supplier strategy

## 10.1.1.1 Network Deployment Strategy

It is important that the network operator chooses the optimum network architecture, technology, and equipment to suit the circumstances and the proposed network deployment strategy. The network topology – whether point-to-point (P2P) or point-to-multipoint (P2MP) – has less of an influence on the operational efficiency of the network, but it will become important for the future migration strategy, described later.

In the following, we will consider the three network deployment strategies:

- full network rollout (covering all households)
- partial network rollout (using third-party infrastructure)
- network extension based on subscriber request

For the first two scenarios we can distinguish between "homes passed" (prepared for connection) and "homes connected" (homes with active subscribers).

In the first strategy, "full network rollout", the communications provider deploys the network inside the complete service area within a defined timeframe. The deployment plan is independent on the number of subscribers who will use the new infrastructure. The advantage of this approach is that it is possible to optimise the roll-out process right at the start. Optimisation can cover:

- location of fibre concentration points (FCPs)
- capacities of cables and conduits
- P2P versus P2MP topology
- degree of splitting and splitter placement in case of P2MP topologies
- spare fibre capacities
- placement of equipment in racks
- fibre assignment at the splice cassettes and within cables

With this approach, there is little need to add fibre connections at some future time as the network path between subscriber and central office is completely installed from the outset. Robust underground closures can be used at the fibre concentration points to reduce the risk of failure; work at these concentration points is mainly conducted during the initial deployment phase.



The problem with this approach is that the development of urban streets and buildings can occur so quickly that it is not possible to plan the exact route of the optical cables in advance. Often the real network requires CAPEX that is 30% higher compared to the cost-optimised structure.

To reduce upfront costs, the full rollout can be changed to a less strict variant, where drop cables are not pre-spliced at the fibre concentration points. This can save on the initial cost of installing feeder cables, but new feeder cables may need to be added if required at a later time.

The way in which cables are laid in the ducts only becomes relevant from an operational point of view when a network failure occurs. In the event of a cable cut, fittings and closures are needed to repair the network, or at worst, the complete cable has to be replaced. If the latter is the case, it will cost more and take longer to repair the cable if no duct or conduit has been used. If protective ducts are used it may be possible to add a new replacement cable without the need to dig up the street. There is a trade-off however, the effort involved in repairing duct systems could be higher, and in addition, a cable cut can sometimes affect both end points of the cable. In worst case scenario the cable would need to be repaired at three locations. Deploying micro-duct systems is the most flexible approach, but at the same time the effort to repair is high.

In the scenario "homes passed" it is possible to reduce the effort required for installation, for example, by using pre-assembled cables. The cable end points remain underground in front of the buildings, but they are already spliced at the fibre concentration points. This means effort at a later date to connect a subscriber is reduced to the final installation at the central office and at the subscriber location.

In the case of a partial network rollout, whether the operator uses third-party infrastructure or extends the network based on subscriber request, the network will expand step by step and its design will be constantly changing. Efficiency can only be achieved if the network structure is designed to be flexible and the required number of work processes in the network rollout is minimised. Therefore overhead lines or duct/micro-duct based structures should be considered for cable deployment. Micro-duct systems allow cables to be added at a later date.

From an installation and maintenance point of view, the number of fibre concentration points should be reduced in order to curtail the number of potential failure points and to lessen the effort of installation. Instead of underground closures, the optimal choice for the fibre concentration points are cabinets as access will be required for continuous changes as indicated in the figure below. Connectors are recommended in all fibre concentration points to allow for additions and changes.



Figure 153: Full network rollout versus partial network rollout.



In the scenario where the network extension is based on subscriber request, the network will be rolled out in certain geographical areas, for example, parts of cities, small towns, or villages, and in accordance with results from market analysis or subscriber surveys. For example, in Germany a take rate of more than 70% within a certain area is generally seen as sufficient for a positive business case. The second possibility is a subscriber request from an enterprise. Due to higher service fees for business subscribers, it may be worthwhile connecting single enterprises with fibre, especially if they are located within industrial areas. This usually results in a mesh network along the streets within these industrial zones.

## 10.1.1.2 General Network Design Rules

Design rules of the strategic planning process will be discussed in more detail as they have a major impact on the operational costs of the constructed network. The following are both relevant to all three network rollout strategies:

- spare capacity
- flexibility and accessibility

Please note that efficiency of operations includes not only operational costs but also time (outage time, time to repair), and the availability of people and skills.

#### **Spare Capacity**

The value of investing in sufficient spare capacity should be obvious. While operating the network in a competitive market, the subscriber base will change and different homes will need to be activated and de-activated over time. The effort required for this recurring task has a significant impact on operational costs. In addition, new buildings in the area may be constructed during the lifetime of the network; for example, new houses are added between existing houses or larger houses developed into MFDs (multi-family dwellings). The network must be adapted to service these new potential subscribers. To meet this changing need additions and changes in the field maybe required, and in worst case, if the availability of spare capacity is limited, network extensions with new fibres will be required.

#### Flexibility

Flexibility and accessibility have a significant impact on costs and network operational efficiency. The following two extreme cases of a network with high and alternatively, low flexibility are discussed to illustrate this point. In reality, however, the most reasonable way of deploying the network lies somewhere in between, depending on individual circumstances and constraints.

A network with low flexibility has a fixed connectivity at the fibre concentration points and only offers configuration options at the central office.

A network with high flexibility has several levels of fibre concentration points in the network where the fibre connectivity can be easily reconfigured and changed over the lifetime of the network.

The low flexibility network is where the fibres of all subscribers are spliced from start to end. The splices are grouped within the fibre concentration point inside a splicing closure that could be placed inside a manhole. In such a network, even with a potential small take-rate, the communications' provider must design full capacity (for 100% of the homes passed) into the network from the start. This increases the initial investment.



The network with high flexibility has street cabinets for each group of subscribers. The cabinet includes a mini optical distribution frame or patch panel, and fibres are connected by patch cords with connectors. Further flexibility can be introduced by deploying fibre cables that pass several houses. The connection between the cable and the houses occurs when the subscriber is activated. The benefit of this approach is that the usage of splitters and fibre cables can be maximised; the connection for each active subscriber is established on demand, using the available free fibres or slots within the cables or enclosure. The installer can aggregate active subscribers onto the same equipment. As a result, even though the take rate is less than 100%, the amount of equipment required in different parts of the network can also be reduced. In other words, the initial investment can be slightly reduced.

When these two extreme options are compared from an operational point of view, there is a clear difference. In a network with low flexibility, the subscriber connections are already pre-installed, and as a result, the effort to activate or deactivate them is very low. In a network with high flexibility the operator must send technicians into the field to establish new connections in several locations, thus expanding the scope for errors if the technician makes a mistake patching the cables. Information about patches must be stored and updated in a network documentation system; any mistakes in this documentation will be difficult to correct at a later date.

There are trade-offs, however. A network with high flexibility has lower power consumption; subscriber connections can be aggregated so that fewer active devices and cards are required at the central office. When new homes are built, a network with high flexibility can easily be changed to accommodate new subscribers within the existing infrastructure. For example, some additional homes can be connected to a passing cable as long as the total number of active users on the cable is smaller than the capacity of the cable. In a network with low flexibility new splices or additional cables would be required to connect homes that were not foreseen at the design stage.

## 10.1.1.3 Future Migration Strategy

Network operators should plan ahead for subsequent changes in capacity and extensions as a result of new technologies in the future. The passive infrastructure is expected to last for a long time, typically at least 30 years, but the life cycle of active equipment and the evolution of the end users' requirements in terms of bit rates is much faster. It is important to consider the future migration strategy, so that the network can be upgraded to higher speeds with the least possible effort.

The chosen network topology will influence the effort required for a future network migration. When a point-to-point topology is used, every subscriber has a dedicated fibre, which can support any arbitrary transmission technology and, in the case of upgrades, will result in minimal changes.

A future migration is also possible within a point-to-multipoint topology, but the effort required can be much higher. Two different migration scenarios can be distinguished:

- increase the bit rates by structural changes, and
- migration to a new transmission technology.

The first method is possible by reducing the splitting ratio in the splitter tree. The work involved can be reduced if connectorized (plug-in) splitters are used, and if splitters are centralised.

The second method can be supported by pre-installation of key components in anticipation of future upgrades. For example, a migration to WDM-PON transmission technology can be carried out with less effort if WDM filters are pre-installed at subscriber premises.



For the reasons mentioned, the network operator should consider the relevant future migration scenarios at an early stage of the strategic planning.

#### 10.1.1.4 Supplier Strategy

There are two main aspects of the supplier or vendor strategy to consider:

- diversity of devices and assembly units
- interoperability

The network operator has to decide how many different types of splices, connectors, patch panels, assembly units, cables, conduits, ducts and micro-ducts should be used. The following example using micro-duct systems illustrates the problem.

There are around 60 different micro-duct systems on the market. Even within the same system, there are a variety of sizes and micro-duct configurations. On the one hand the huge variety of systems makes it possible to find the perfect system for each street, however, huge variety of systems increases the overhead costs, as it will be necessary to stock all parts. If a network operator has a stock shortage then new parts will need to be ordered in case of a network failure. The result is a long repair time.

The network operator should define at an early planning stage the devices, assembly units, cables, pipes, and micro-ducts needed for deployment in the network. And closely related to this is the question about choice of supplier.

In general a specific product or product line can be purchased from one vendor (a single vendor strategy) or from several vendors (a multi-vendor strategy). The advantage of a single vendor strategy is that all systems are compatible (homogeneous system). The disadvantage of such a strategy is that it leads to dependency on this vendor. This is why most network operators prefer a multi-vendor strategy.

The best outcome from an operations and maintenance perspective is to choose vendors with products that are standardised rather than proprietary. The products should be tested prior to installation and operation to ensure they do interoperate and can be deployed at different places within the network. This simplifies operational processes in the future.

## 10.1.2 Network Documentation

All communications providers, whether incumbent or new network operators, have to go through the same process steps of planning, execution, and operation. The requirements for this life cycle are so complex and comprehensive that software support is required for each of the three process steps.

The network operator's objective is to ensure that the data created during the planning, design and build phases is retained so the resulting network can be operated and maintained efficiently. Without this data operational costs will increase due to inefficiencies in the operational processes.

Various methods of storing the data are possible, from a central database repository or data warehouse to a locally held GIS-based documentation of the network layers.



The following aspects, which are required for efficient operation and maintenance, will be discussed:

- 1. Field verification of the network design.
- 2. As-built documentation for network rollout and for all changes made during operation.
- 3. Central data management to combine resource management with provisioning and fulfilment.
- 4. Added value of central data management for service assurance.

#### 10.1.2.1 Field Verification of Network Design

While it is commonplace for network designers to undertake field visits before developing the initial network design, it is less common for a field visit to take place once the initial design has been completed. This has a number of implications as, once the build is in progress, any problems with the proposed design may force changes to the design. Changes to cable routes can have an impact on the design within the current construction area, but can also affect other construction areas, for instance, if a cable in one construction area leads over the ducts or conduit into a second construction area. In extreme cases changes in the field may completely invalidate the optimisation of a particular area. This is described in more detail in Chapter 3.

It is also essential that every network object, such as a location, a cable or a device, receive a unique ID throughout the company. As reasonable and easy as it sounds, it is a major challenge from the IT perspective and it is almost impossible to solve for large networks. Therefore it is important that a network operator decides to introduce a central data management, which creates and assigns the IDs that will be used in all applications.

#### 10.1.2.2 As-built Documentation

Based on experience, the installed network can differ by up to 30% compared to the planned network. Therefore it is vital for the operation of the network that all changes are documented properly. The chosen process strongly depends on the actual network rollout project.

At the end of a turnkey project, the complete project including documentation is handed over to the client. This means the documentation of all intermediate steps is not relevant for the client. However if the network operator is managing the project, all intermediate steps need to be documented. For example, the company blowing the cables needs to know exactly which one of the micro-ducts leads to each building. Any inconsistency between planning and installation results in mistakes and delays, such as blowing the cable into the wrong duct.

In the past, network operators would enter the as-built data into separate applications; the as-built database being completely independent of the planning process and the planning tool. An integrated solution (planning and documentation in one tool) simplifies and speeds up processes leading to additional operational savings.

The changes between the as-built documentation and the original design can include altered cable routes, different types of material, or even new locations, all of which can ultimately influence the attenuation budget or the ordering of splicing. This can invalidate the optimisation performed during the design phase, resulting in unplanned costs and missed budgets. Therefore it is important to minimise changes to the design as much as possible during construction.



Reducing the number of changes to the initial design means the as-built documentation can be updated more quickly. Making use of tablets in the field allows the construction crews to electronically mark-up the changes they have made from the final design to the as-built network. These changes are then incorporated into the master inventory, in the office, automatically.

Increasingly a "bring your own device" (BYOD) approach is common when construction is outsourced. Universal software that allows contractors to access the relevant designs and update them, either directly in the field or afterwards from their office, can significantly streamline this process. The operator's back office team can then confirm the proposed changes before accepting them into the master inventory.

Once again the benefits include faster completion of work and the generation of high-quality network documentation, which is vital for the successful operation of the network.

#### 10.1.2.3 Central Data Management

The eTOM map distinguishes between "resource management" and "service management" and reflects the division of systems in the current IT world. Network operators typically have separate inventory management systems and subscriber service systems. From a resource perspective, it is not only important to know whether a certain resource is available, but also which resources are busy and for how long.

In FTTH networks, the fundamental resource needed to deliver service is the physical fibre-optic cable that connects the central office to the end subscriber. When a prospective subscriber requests a connection, the systems covering order management and service need to quickly establish if a physical connection is available or even possible. These details can only be found in the physical network documentation, and therefore, need to be accessible to other systems so that they can respond to such requests.

The approach of a central data management is to integrate the physical network documentation with the order or the service management systems so that they can quickly answer any queries relating to service availability. Such a combined approach is often referred to as federated inventory management.

It is also important to maintain the network documentation during the period the network is in operation. Whenever subscriber connections are enabled or disabled, the network documentation should be updated as soon as possible to avoid degrading the quality of the data. This is critical to ensuring that provisioning requests do not fail. Failed orders result in additional operational costs, loss of income, and a reduction in subscriber satisfaction.

#### 10.1.2.4 Central Data Management and Service Assurance

Central data management also has significant benefits for service assurance processes. Solutions, such as, a federated inventory provide a cross-domain view which integrates the physical network inventory with the service inventory. A subscriber chooses a specific service, this service is then routed over fibres from the subscriber to the central office, the fibres are part of cables, cables lead over conduits and pipes, conduits and pipes are deployed in ducts.

An integrated solution can answer a wide range of questions, such as: What subscribers and what services are affected if conduit system xyz is cut? Are there unused fibres in other cables leading over different conduit systems that have not been affected, and if so, can they be used instead?

What are the necessary steps to access identified spare fibres for important traffic?



If data concerning subscribers and their services is combined with data about resources, then it is possible to inform the affected subscribers of network failures or possible installation work that may impact on the services they receive. In many cases this can be achieved before the subscriber is even aware they have been affected by the outage, for example by combining data from resource inventory with health indicators from the subscriber premise equipment.

This concept can be taken one stage further by integrating fault management systems with the federated inventory management. For example, if an active device detects a fault, a cross-domain view is required to identify the faults in the passive infrastructure. Firstly the subscriber has to be identified, followed by locating the fault and then the repair carried out.

If, for example, the fault is the result of a cable cut, the fault management system will detect an alarm and deduce that services will be affected. This information can be retrieved from the service inventory and then an appropriate restoration plan can be implemented.

However, in order to fully restore service, the cut cable will need to be fixed. One of the key challenges is to locate the cut. The normal practice is to use OTDR (optical time-domain reflectometer) equipment to determine the distance along the fibre of the cut. Once the distance is established it is then possible to use geospatial data held in the physical inventory to precisely locate the cut in the field. This process can be performed by the engineer in the field using a tablet or handled by an engineer in the network operations centre who is able to access the physical inventory will submit the coordinate of the fibre cut to the fault management system, the physical inventory will submit the gispatch the field engineer to that location.

The main point is that accurate and up-to-date physical and service inventory data is critical when determining the impact and the location of a fault. Getting subscribers back on the network quickly is essential to meet service level agreements and maintain subscriber satisfaction.

#### 10.1.2.5 Summary of network documentation

High-quality network documentation is an important part of efficient network operations and maintenance and the cost of maintaining network documentation should be considered in the context of more efficient network designs, construction and operations. Therefore the relatively modest cost can result in significant savings through faster and more accurate designs leading to reduced overruns during construction and more efficient network operations.

Of course not all network operators are able to change their IT system completely, therefore central data management concepts allow different specialised solutions to be deployed and integrated.

In conclusion, efficient operation and maintenance is only possible when the network has been thoroughly documented and said documentation updated.

## **10.1.3** Standardise and Streamline OAM Processes

This section addresses the importance of process management in supporting FTTH network operations and maintenance and takes into account the opportunities (and risks) associated with process management whilst highlighting some common approaches applied by network operators. Special consideration will be given to FTTH network build, fulfilment and assurance.



## 10.1.3.1 Introduction to Process Management

Network operations and maintenance are "big ticket" items with operators, typically devoting around one third of their total operating expenditure to such activities.

Process management is increasingly gaining favour over historical cost-cutting exercises. Furthermore, process management offers a methodical approach to identifying specific problems such as bottlenecks and non-value-add activity (waste), etc.

Many different terms are used to describe process-based management approaches; for example: business process re-engineering (BPR) and business process management (BPM) to name just two. Whilst such terms are not identical, they do largely overlap and are used interchangeably within the industry. In this document, we will use the generic term "process management" to broadly describe all such approaches and methodologies (such as TQM, Six Sigma and Lean, etc.).

Naturally, the overall concept of process management continues to evolve, driven by changes in technology, resources and the business environment. However, its basic value proposition has remained unchanged for decades; namely, to process more with less effort and of a higher quality.

## 10.1.3.2 Process Management Adoption

Whilst process management is a well-established managerial discipline across most major industries, many network operators have been slow to embrace it - and have therefore largely forgone the benefits that such an approach offers.

This is particularly evident in developing economies where many operators favour a labour-intensive approach to building and operating their networks. Whilst often described as short-sighted, it is easy to understand why operators largely rely on cheap labour to compensate for shortfalls in their planning and execution capabilities. Inevitably it will take time for these operators to mature in their thinking and grasp the process opportunity. Of course, operators in developed economies don't have the luxury of working in such an "inefficient" manner and it is therefore no coincidence that process management adoption has been much higher in these more mature markets.

However, process management adoption is not a trivial undertaking for a network operator and a number have questioned whether they are mature enough to make it work. Whilst their concerns are undoubtedly valid, ironically it is these same (less mature) operators who stand to benefit the most. When implemented correctly, process management helps to compensate for a lack of organisational capability and experience. Being prescriptive, it clearly explains what needs to be done and removes individual guesswork. It is therefore a highly effective training tool for operators needing to upskill their workforce and "mature" their company culture.

## 10.1.3.3 A Model for Change

A popular paradigm for driving process improvement is the 'As-Is' to 'To-Be' approach. 'As-Is' is the process as it currently stands; whereas 'To-Be' is the target process after it has been re-engineered. The operator then builds a bridge from the current 'As-Is' position to the desired 'To-Be' outcome via a series of changes. Examples include changes in responsibility, backfilling positions, automating tasks, changing structures, etc. It is also worth remembering that company culture is as relevant as the tasks and resources that the process utilises.

The beauty of this approach is that the required changes can be broken down into small manageable pieces and completed over a period of time. Each change is a step in the right direction and this type of iterative approach also sets the foundations for continuous improvement. Employees become used to the culture of ongoing change and the pursuit of improvement becomes ingrained in the company culture.



## 10.1.3.4 **Process Standardisation**

As with any process, if more than one individual completes a task without any parameters in place, then it is likely that more than one method is being used. Collaborative process standardisation results in more consistent output, better training and where industry regulations must be enforced, provides assurance around company compliance.

As an example, consider an FTTx rollout where a network operator is monitoring the cost-perpremise passed. Invariably the build cost for the most expensive 10-20% of premises far exceeds the average. However, whilst some incremental costs are no doubt unavoidable (due to physical factors such as lower population density, etc.), others are often caused by a breakdown in the process itself.

#### 10.1.3.5 Standard Operating Procedures

A Standard Operating Procedure (SOP) is a document that outlines the steps required to complete a particular process. A SOP defines what needs to be done, when and by whom. A SOP takes the uncertainty out of a process. Employees and contractors have a clear directive to follow.

A SOP should cover both operational and support processes, with the procedures for each core process mapped from start to finish. Ideally, processes are mapped by those who already undertake the process, but the process should be simple and clear enough to be followed by most. Generally, diagrams and visual depictions are preferred to overly technical, verbose explanations.

The figure below shows an example of the first steps to developing Standard Operating Procedures.





#### 10.1.3.6 The Impact of Outsourcing

With a greater number of network operators outsourcing more of their activities to managed service providers and third-party contractors, outsourcing is impacting heavily on the industry. This is especially true with build, operations and maintenance processes, which are the most frequent areas to be outsourced.



Even with managed service providers in place, accountability (and therefore overall process ownership) ultimately remains with the operator. So, whilst outsourcing clearly changes the operating model, it doesn't remove the need for process management. This helps to explain why many network operators have failed to achieve the anticipated financial returns from outsourcing.

Many have seen outsourcing as a way of getting rid of their problems, without first fixing them. Unfortunately, the more parties involved, the more complex becomes the operating model.

- Common causes of outsourcing failure include:
- incongruent and subjective goals
- misunderstanding of the process
- lack of standards
- inadequate reporting and transparency
- unclear division of responsibilities

#### 10.1.3.7 Logistics and Inventory Management

Logistics and inventory management are also vital components that must be integrated into the operator's core processes. Once the network equipment supplier agreement is in place, attention must move to the logistics for ordering and delivering the required materials to site. This must be tightly coordinated with the workforce management process in order to ensure the technicians have access to the correct materials to complete the work.

For the network operator, it is fundamentally about ensuring that both the key personnel and network inventory are available and present on site at the right time. Failures will inevitably mean wasted time and effort for technicians who are in place to complete a scheduled task but lack the equipment. This in turn can have long-term repercussions for scheduled work timetables and deadlines. Process management is essential in coordinating workforce management and logistics management.

These issues can be avoided by establishing an integrated, end-to-end supply chain, which, with the right expertise and tools, can in turn drive efficiency into the delivery of services. Workflows therefore need to be tightly integrated from an inventory and workforce point-of-view.

#### 10.1.3.8 Enabling Process Management with Software

The power of software to support operators' process management initiatives is well established. In fact, very few processes can be considered as coming close to optimisation without the use of software to manage and report on the process.

Once a process has been standardised (to the agreement and satisfaction of all key personnel) and documented, it can be replicated in the software. This means configuring the software to match the operator's desired workflow. The implementation should also extend beyond the network operator to include contractors. The software then helps to manage, measure and report on the process.

#### 10.1.3.9 Process Measurement

Effectively measuring a process ensures that it is delivering to the agreed standard and improving over time. Generally speaking, this means establishing a small, balanced set of key performance indicators (KPIs) that helps to answer the following key questions:

- How effective is the process?
- How efficient is the process?
- How agile is the process?



#### 10.1.3.10 Summary of process management

Process management can be a powerful tool for network operators needing to reduce their operations and maintenance costs and improve service performance. It allows operators to deliver more with less: to improve output (both in terms of quantity and quality) with less input (and therefore lower costs).

## 10.1.4 Conclusions of operational efficiency

Three key aspects were identified that have an impact on the efficiency of FTTH network operations and maintenance:

- Strategic planning at the start of a project can minimise the effort required to operate and maintain the network later. The deployment strategy can be optimised to enable more efficient network operations and maintenance. Clear network design rules are required. Considerations include the provision of spare capacity for network additions and extensions, the required flexibility and accessibility of cables and conduit, and the future migration strategy. Finally, the number of suppliers and the variety of equipment deployed in the network has a strong impact on the complexity of maintaining the network.
- 2. Well-maintained **network documentation** is important to keep the network manageable, avoids unnecessary errors and outage times in case of repairs, and overall saves time and cost during the network operation and maintenance phase. To create and maintain high-quality documentation is an important but challenging task. Software tools are indispensable; some can collect data in the field and enter those details directly into the asbuilt documentation for an up- to-date record. With a centralised data management system, inconsistencies between different teams and data sources can be avoided, which improves the service performance of the network.
- 3. Standardised **process management** provides a set of proven and effective practices to support network operations and maintenance in a systematic way, while increasing the efficiency of all related procedures and tasks. Further aspects, such as inventory management and process measurement are taken as relevant components to support the whole process management approach. It is also possible to apply a tool-supported process management to make the implementation sufficient.

These three approaches have been applied and proven to be effective by a number of FTTH network operators in different countries around the world.

## **10.2** Deployment and maintenance guidelines

Important deployment and maintenance guidelines are discussed in the following.

## 10.2.1 General considerations related to safety

Proper safety zones using marker cones and traffic signals should be organised.

Possible traffic disruption should be coordinated with local authorities. All manholes and cable chambers identified and those intended for access should be tested for flammable and toxic gases before entry.



www.ftthcouncil.eu

With regard to confined spaces, full air and oxygen tests need to be conducted before entry and forced ventilation provided as necessary. Whilst working underground, all personnel must have continuous monitoring gas warning equipment in operation at all times – flammable, toxic, carbon dioxide and oxygen levels.

In cases where flammable gas is detected, the local Fire Service must be contacted immediately.

All existing electrical cables need to be inspected for the possibility of damage and exposed conductors.

## 10.2.2 General considerations about constructions and equipment

A full survey of the complete underground duct system or aerial plant has to be carried out prior to installation.

Unacceptably high water levels in cable chambers and sewage/water tunnels must be pumped out and ducts checked for damage and potential obstructions. Rodding of the duct sections using a test mandrel or brush is recommended prior to installation.

Check manholes to ensure their suitability for coiling slack cables, provision of cable supports and space for mounting splice joint closures.

A plan needs to be drawn up to establish the optimal positioning of the cable payoff, mid-point fleeting and cable take-up/ winching equipment. The same also applies to those cables that are to be blown into the duct and which might require a blowing head and compressor equipment.

Allowances for elevation changes should be taken into consideration.

Fleeting the cable at mid sections using a "figure of 8" technique can greatly increase the pulled installation section distance using long cable lengths. Preparation is needed to make sure these locations are suitable for cable fleeting.

Contact the duct or inner duct manufacturer to establish cable installation guidelines.

Ribbed, corrugated ducts and ducts with a low-friction liner are designed to reduce cable/duct friction during installation. Smooth non-lined ducts may require a suitable cable lubricant.

Pulling grips are used to attach the pulling rope to the end of the cable. These are often mesh/weave based or mechanically attached to the cable end minimising the diameter and thus space of duct used. A fused swivel device should also be applied between the cable-pulling grip and pulling rope.

The swivels are designed to release any pulling generated torque, thus protecting the cable. A mechanical fuse protects the cable from excess pulling forces by breaking a sacrificial shear pin. These pins are available in different tensile values.

A pulling winch with suitable capacity should be used and fitted with a dynamometer to monitor tension during pulling.

Sheaves, capstans and quadrant blocks are used to guide the cable under tension from the payoff, to and from the duct entry and to the take-up equipment to ensure that the cable's minimum bend diameter is maintained.

Communication radios, mobile phones or similar must be available at all locations of the operation.



Uses of midpoint or assist winches are recommended in cases where the cable tensile load is approaching its limit and could expedite a longer pull section.

Use of a cable payoff device, a reel or drum trailer, is also recommended.

For aerial applications, appropriate equipment such as bucket trucks should be foreseen and specific safety instructions for working at height need to be respected. Specialised hardware is available for cable and closure fixture.

## 10.2.3 General considerations about cabling methods

#### 10.2.3.1 Duct and micro-duct cabling

Duct installation and maintenance is relatively straightforward. Occasionally cables may be dug up inadvertently; hence maintenance lengths should be available at all times.

Duct and buried cables can have similar constructions, with the latter having more protection from the environment in which it is to be installed.

Allowances should be made when calculating the route length: typically 3-5m per joint will suffice.

Space cable spare/slack loops at chamber positions of typically 20m. This will allow for mid-span access joints to be added at a later date.

The minimum bend radii (MBR) and maximum tensile load values for the cables must not be exceeded.

MBR is usually expressed as a multiplier of the cable diameter (e.g. 20xD) and is normally defined as a maximum value for static and dynamic situations

Static MBR is the minimum allowable bend value for the cable in operation, i.e. coiled within a manhole or chamber. The dynamic MBR value is the minimum allowable bend value for the cable under installation pulling conditions.

Pulling load (or pulling tension, N; or force, Kgf) values are normally specified for short and long-term conditions. Short-term load values represent the maximum tension that can be applied to the cable during the installation process and long-term values represent the maximum tension that can be applied to the cable for the lifespan of the cable in service.

In cases where cables are to be installed by blowing, the cable and duct must be compatible for a blowing operation, therefore cable and duct supplier/s must be contacted for installation guidelines.

#### 10.2.3.2 Direct buried cable

Installation techniques for burying cables can include trenching, ploughing, directional drilling and thrust boring. Reference should also be made to IEC specification 60794-1-1 Annex C.3.6 Installation of buried cables.

Confirm minimum bend radii of cable and maximum pulling tensions for installation and long-term service conditions and ensure cable tension is monitored during burial and cable maximum limits are not exceeded.

A full survey of the buried section will ensure an efficient installation operation.



Cross over points with other services and utilities must be identified and likewise for all buried cables which need to be marked for any future location.

Backfilling must ensure the cables are suitably protected from damage from large rocks e.g. sand. All backfilling must be tamped to prevent future ground movement and settlement.

All surfaces must be restored to local standards.

#### 10.2.3.3 Aerial cable

Reference should be made to IEC specification 60794-1-1 Annex C.3.5 Installation of aerial optical cables.

Cables used in aerial installations are different in construction to those for underground applications, and are designed to handle wind and snow/ice loads. Requirements may differ according to geographic area; for example, a hurricane region will experience higher winds.

Cables need a defined amount of slack between poles to reduce the cable loading due to its own weight. On-pole slack needs to be stored for cable access or closure installation.

Poles that are shared between operators or service providers (CATV, electricity, POTS, etc.) is common practice and will require specific organisation.

## 10.2.4 Integrity and pressure test for conduits

Two tests should be performed at the final stage of installation to ensure and certify that the buried microduct/conduit system is without any defects and fit for installation of an optical fibre cable.

Both tests should be completed:

- when new conduit deployment is finished
- before optical fibre cable is blown into conduit
- after any maintenance is carried out on conduit route

#### 10.2.4.1 Integrity test

This test is conducted to check and find the location at which the individual microducts might have become deformed due to a sharp bend, kinks, crush, severe indentations in the trench bed or poor workmanship during laying of microduct conduits etc. Possible microduct faults that may show up during the test process are:

- Missing sections of microduct
- Micro-connectors not connected
- Leakage at micro-connector
- Kink in the duct
- Blockage in the duct
- Puncture in duct

#### STEP 1: Air Blow – testing microduct continuity

Allow full discharge of the compressor with 10 bars for 1-5min according to the chosen duct length and ID. At the other end of the microduct the airflow has to be appreciable. Airflow volume at the far microduct end indicates:



- Good airflow microduct continuity is OK
- Low airflow loose connector, duct puncture or partial blockage
- No airflow missing duct, blockage or dis-integrity

#### **STEP 2: Sponge** – cleaning the duct

Having completed a successful Air Blow test, the next step is to clean the duct inside from dust, water or other dirt. This step must be completed if cable blowing follows!

The sponge diameter must be approximately twice the duct ID and length 40-50mm. Check with the duct or blowing machine supplier. It can take a few minutes to get the sponge through the microduct route.

- 1. Dampen the sponge in blowing lubricant
- 2. Screw the sponge inside the microduct
- 3. Blow the sponge through with compressed air using pressure about 10 bar.

STEP 3 - SHUTTLE BLOWING - check for sharp bends, kinks, partial blockages or deformations

If STEPS 1 and 2 have been successfully carried out the next step is shuttle blowing to test if the microduct is suitable for cable blowing. Never step much be carried out ahead of cable blowing!



Figure 155: Preparation for shuttle blowing.

The general recommendation for the shuttle size is:

#### Shuttle outer diameter = 80% Micro-duct inner diameter

Make sure there is a "catcher" in place at the far end of the microduct to catch the shuttle when it shoots out. A flying shuttle can cause severe injury and damage.



## 10.2.4.2 Pressure test

The pressure test helps to identify any micro-connector leakage or microduct punctures and is conducted only if the integrity test has passed. A typical pressure test is as follows:

- 1. Terminate both ends of the microduct with a valve micro-connector.
- 2. Built up pressure to 5.5 bar and close the inlet valve. Wait for the pressure to stabilize this can take a few minutes and repeat until the pressure ceases to drop.
- 3. Release the pressure to bring it to 5 bars, if the pressure drops, increase the pressure by opening the inlet valve to build up pressure of 5 bar.
- 4. Once the pressure is settled (no drop within 1 minute) start a countdown of 30 minutes.
- 5. If the pressure does not drop below 4.5 bars within 30 minutes, the pressure test is passed.

Note: Pressure test rules can differ and can be defined individually by telecom operators.

## 10.2.5 General considerations about internal operation and maintenance guidelines

Internal operation and maintenance guidelines should cover:

- measurements
- highlight key infrastructure items
- identification of infrastructure elements subject to maintenance operations
- spare infrastructure items to be kept on hand in case of accident
- plan for catastrophic network failure from external factors, such as accidental digging of cable or duct



# 11 FTTH Test Guidelines

# **11.1 Connector care**

## 11.1.1 Why is it important to clean connectors?

One of the first tasks to perform when designing fibre-optic networks is to evaluate the acceptable budget loss in order to create an installation that will meet the design requirements. To adequately characterize the budget loss, the following key parameters are generally considered:

- transmitter launch power, temperature and aging
- fibre connections connectors and splices' quality
- cable fibre loss and temperature effects
- receiver detector sensitivity
- others safety margin and repairs

When one of the above variables fails to meet specifications, network performance can be affected; in worst case scenario, degradation can lead to network failure. Unfortunately, not all variables can be controlled with ease during the deployment of the network or the maintenance stage; however, one component that is often overlooked is the connector, sometimes overused (test jumpers). This can be controlled using the proper procedure.

CONNECTOR CONTAMINATION IS THE FIRST SOURCE OF TROUBLESHOOTING IN OPTICAL NETWORKS

A single particle mated into the core of a fibre can cause significant back reflection (also known as return loss), insertion loss, and equipment damage. Visual inspection is the only way to determine if fibre connectors are truly clean.

By following a simple practice of proactive visual inspection and cleaning, poor optical performance and potential equipment damage can be avoided.

Since many of the contaminants are too small to be seen with the naked eye, it is important that every fibre connector is inspected with a microscope before a connection is made. These fibre inspection scopes are designed to magnify and display the critical portion of the ferrule where the connection will occur.

## 11.1.2 What are the possible contaminants?

Connector design and production techniques have eliminated most of the difficulties in achieving core alignment and physical contact. However, maintaining a clean connector interface still remains a challenge.



Dirt is everywhere; a typical dust particle as small as 2–15µm in diameter can significantly affect signal performance and cause permanent damage to the fibre end face. Most field-test failures can be attributed to dirty connectors; the majority are not inspected until they fail, when permanent damage may have already occurred.

If dirt particles become attached to the core surface the light becomes blocked, creating unacceptable insertion loss and back reflection (return loss). Furthermore, those particles can permanently damage the glass interface, digging into the glass and leaving pits that create further back reflection if mated. Also, large particles of dirt on the cladding layer and/or the ferrule can introduce a physical barrier that prevents physical contact and creates an air gap between the fibres. To further complicate matters, loose particles have a tendency to migrate into the air gap.





A 1µm dust particle on a single-mode fibre core can block up to 1% (0.05 dB loss) of the light, a dust particle the size of 9µm can incur considerable damage. An additional factor for maintaining end faces contaminate free is the effect high-intensity light has on the connector end-face: some telecommunication components can produce optical signals with a power up to +30dBm (1W), which can have catastrophic results when combined with an unclean or damaged connector end face (e.g. fibre fuse).

Inspection zones are a series of concentric circles that identify areas of interest on the connector end face (see Figure 157). The inner-most zones are more sensitive to contamination than the outer zones. For multifibre connectors only zones A & B are applicable





Figure 157: Connector end face inspection zones

To help avoid connector failure and to provide some guidelines as to what is acceptable or not, (this to remove subjectivity) the IEC has defined a standard (61300-3-35) to define acceptance criteria based on the number and size of defect and this for each of the zones (A-B-C-D) of a connector. This standard also defined acceptance criteria for each type of connector available on the market (ex: MM, SM, UPC, APC).

Dust, isopropyl alcohol, oil from hands, mineral oils, index matching gel, epoxy resin, oil-based black ink and gypsum are among the contaminants that can affect a connector end-face. These contaminants can occur on their own or in combinations. Note that each contaminant has a different appearance and, regardless of appearance, the most critical areas to inspect are the core and cladding regions where contamination in these regions can greatly affect the quality of the signal.

Figure 158 illustrates the end face of different connectors that have been inspected with a video-inspection probe.





Figure 158: Appearance of various contaminants on a connector end face

## 11.1.3 What components need to be inspected and cleaned?

The following network components should be inspected and cleaned:

- all panels equipped with adaptors where connectors are inserted in one or both sides
- test patch cords and tester ports
- all connectors mounted on patch cables or pigtails

## 11.1.4 When should a connector be inspected and cleaned?

Connectors should be checked as part of an inspection routine to prevent costly and time-consuming fault finding later. These stages include:

- after installation
- before testing
- before connecting
- any time a connector is manipulated

## **11.1.5** How to check connectors

To properly inspect the connector's end face, a microscope designed for the fibre-optic connector end face is recommended. The many types of inspection tools on the market fall into two main categories: fibre inspection probes (also called video fibre-scopes) and optical microscopes. The table below lists the main characteristics of these inspection tools:



| Inspection tool                                 | Main characteristics  |
|---|---|
| Fibre inspection probes /<br>video fibre scopes | Image is displayed on an external video screen, PC, smart phone or test instrument.   |
|   | Eye protection from direct contact with a live signal. Image capture capability for report documentation.   |
|   | Ease of use in crowded patch panels.  |
|   | Ideal for checking individual connectors mounted on patch cords or<br>pigtails and multi-fibre connectors (e.g. MPO/MTP).   |
|   | Different degrees of magnification are available (100X/200X/400X).  |
|   | Adapter tips for all connector types are available.   |
|   | Pass/Fail information according to IEC standard.  |
| Optical microscopes                             | Safety filter* protects eyes from direct contact with a live fibre.<br>Two different types of microscopes are needed: one to inspect<br>patch cords and another to inspect connectors in bulkhead patch |
|   | panels.   |

\* Never use a direct magnifying device (optical microscope) to inspect live optical fibre.

A fibre inspection probe comes with different tips to match the connector type: such as SC, FC, LC, Multifibre such as MTP and these can be angle-polished connectors (APC) or flat-polished connectors (PC).



| Configuration name:<br>Connector type:<br>Fiber type:<br>Polishing type:<br>Cladding diameter: | (SF) Single-Fiber<br>(SM) Single-Mod | connector  | ber UPC Connector with 0 | 0RL ≥ 45 dB | Live Video       |
|--|--------------------------------------|------------|--------------------------|-------------|------------------|
| Zone   | Scratch                              | ies        | Defec                    | ts          | Main Menu        |
|  | Criteria                             | Thresholds | Criteria                 | Thresholds  | File 🕨           |
| A: Core<br>0-25µm  | 0µm≲size<∞                           | 0          | 0µm≲size<∞               | 0           | User Preferences |
| o zapan  |                                      |            |                          |             | Test Config. 🕨   |
| B: Cladding  | 0≤size<3µm                           | any        | 0≤size<2µm               | any         | Reset            |
| 25-120µm   | 3µm≤size<∞                           | 0          | 2≤size<5µm<br>5µm≤size<∞ | 5           | Navigation       |
|  |                                      | 1          |                          |             | System Info 🕨    |
| C: Adhesive<br>120-130µm   | -                                    | -          | -                        | 17 C        |                  |
| D: Contact   |                                      |            | 0≤size<10µm              | any         |                  |
| 130-250µm  | 0µm≤size<∞                           | any        | 10µm≤size<∞              | 0           | 0 0 0            |

Figure 159: Automated connector analysis software

## **11.1.6** Inspection instructions

Visual fibre interconnect inspection is the only way to determine the cleanliness of the connectors prior to mating. A video microscope magnifies an image of a connector's end face for viewing on a laptop or a portable display, depending on the product used.





**INSPECT** Select the appropriate tip for the connector/adaptor to be inspected. Inspect both connector end faces (patchcord/bulkhead/ pluggable interface) using the microscope.

## **IS IT CLEAN?**

| CLEAN   | No. During inspection defects are found on the end face; clean the connector using a designated optics cleaning tool. The connector may be permanently damaged after repeated cleaning and will need to be replaced |
|---------|---|
| CONNECT | Yes. If non-removable, non-linear features and scratches are within acceptable criteria limits according to operator's thresholds or standards, the fibre interfaces can be connected.                              |

## **11.1.7** Tools needed for inspection

There are two methods for fibre end face inspection. If the cable assembly is accessible, insert the connector ferrule into the microscope to conduct the inspection; this is generally known as patch cord inspection. If the connector is within a mating adaptor on the device or patch panel, insert a probe microscope into the open end of the adaptor and view the connector inside; this is known as bulkhead or through adaptor connector inspection.

## 11.1.7.1 Patch cord inspection

- Select the appropriate tip that corresponds to the connector type under inspection and fit it on to the microscope.
- Insert the connector into the tip and adjust focus to inspect. (Last line in drawing: singlemode fibre)







## 11.1.7.2 Bulkhead/through adaptor connector inspection

- Select the appropriate tip/probe that corresponds to the connector type under inspection and fit it to the probe microscope.
- Insert the probe into the bulkhead and adjust focus to inspect

## **11.1.8** Cleaning wipes and tools

## 11.1.8.1 Dry Cleaning

Simple dry cleaning wipes, including a number of lint free wipes and other purpose-made wipes, are available. This category also includes purpose-made fibre-optic connector cleaning cassettes and reels, e.g. Cletop cartridges.

WARNING! EXPOSED WIPES CAN EASILY BECOME CONTAMINATED IN THE FIELD.

Cleaning materials must be protected from contamination. Do not open until just prior to use.

Wipes should be used by hand or attached to a soft surface or resilient pad. Not applied using a hard surface as this can cause damage to the fibre. If applying by hand, do not use the surface held by the fingers as this can contain finger grease residue.



Figure 160: Examples of dry cleaning wipes and tools for fibre-optic connectors



Figure 161: Examples of cleaning fluid and wipes

#### 11.1.8.2 Damp cleaning

Cleaning fluids or solvents are generally used in combination with wipes to provide a combination of chemical and mechanical action to clean the fibre end face. Also available are pre-soaked wipes supplied in sealed sachets, e.g. IPA medi-swabs. Caution: some cleaning fluids, particularly IPA, can leave a residue that is difficult to remove.

- Cleaning fluid is only effective when used with the mechanical action provided by a wipe.
- The solvent must be fast drying.
- Do not saturate as this will over-wet the end face. Lightly moisten the wipe.
- The ferrule must be cleaned immediately with a clean dry wipe.
- Do not leave solvent on the side walls of the ferrule as this will transfer onto the optical alignment sleeve during connection.
- Wipes must be used by hand or on a soft surface or resilient pad.
- Applied using a hard surface can cause damage to the fibre.



## 11.1.8.3 Bulkhead/through adaptor connector cleaning tools

Not all connectors can be readily removed from a bulkhead/through adaptor and are, therefore, more difficult to access for cleaning. This category includes ferrule interface (or fibre stubs) and physical contact lenses within an optical transceiver; it does not however include non-contact lens elements within such devices.

Sticks and bulkhead cleaners are designed to reach into alignment sleeves and other cavities to reach the end face or lens, and aid in removal of debris. These tools make it possible to clean the end face or lens in-situ, within the adaptor or without removing the bulkhead connector. When cleaning transceiver or receptacles, care must be taken to identify the contents of the port prior to cleaning. Take care to avoid damage when cleaning transceiver flat lenses.



Figure 162: Examples of bulkhead/through adapter cleaning tools

Recommendations when manipulating fibre-optic cables:

- When testing in a patch panel, only the port corresponding to the fibre being tested should be uncapped—protective caps should be replaced immediately after testing.
- Unused caps should be kept in a small plastic bag.
- Lifespan of a connector is typically rated at 500 matings.
- Test jumpers used in conjunction with test instruments should be replaced after a maximum of 500 matings (refer to EIA-455-21A).
- If using a launch cord for OTDR testing, do not use a test jumper in between the OTDR and launch cord or in between the launch cord and the patch panel. Launch cords should be replaced or returned to manufacturers for re-polishing after 500 matings.
- Do not allow unmated connectors to touch any surface. Connector ferrules should never be touched other than for cleaning.
- Clean and inspect each connector using a fibre scope or, preferably, a video scope, after cleaning or prior to mating.
- Test equipment connectors should be cleaned and inspected (preferably with a videoscope) every time the instrument is used.

# **11.2** Testing FTTH networks during construction

During network construction, some testing occurs in the outside plant. When fibre is laid down new splices have to be done and tested using an OTDR. For accurate measurements, bidirectional OTDR measurements should be performed.

For acceptance testing, it is important to test each segment of the construction. There are several testing methods, some of which are presented here. Each has specific advantages and disadvantages. Selecting the most appropriate method depends on the constraints faced: labour costs, budget loss, testing time combined with service activation time, maximum acceptable measurement uncertainty, etc.



An additional factor that must be considered when determining extent of testing is the skill levels of the technicians. Employing unskilled fibre-optic technicians during construction phase is very costly if mistakes need to be rectified ahead of and after service is added.

## 11.2.1 Method 1: Use of optical loss test sets

This first method involves using an optical loss test set (OLTS), comprising two test sets that share data to measure insertion loss (IL) and optical return loss (ORL). First, the units should be referenced prior to measuring IL.



Figure 163: Test sets should be referenced prior to measurement

Next, ORL sensitivity is set by calibrating the minimum ORL that the units can measure. The limitation comes from the weakest part of the test setup, which is most likely to be the connector between the units and reference test jumper. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to set the ORL sensitivity on both units and to reference the source and the power meter.

Measurements can now be taken on the end-to-end network or any individual installed segment, such as the fibres between the FCP and the drop terminal. The purpose of the test is to identify any transposed fibres and to measure the IL and ORL to guarantee that the loss budget has been met.



Figure 164: Measuring distribution fibre IL and ORL using two OLTSs



174

| Fibre | λ (nm) | Loss (Pr $\rightarrow$ CO) | $\begin{array}{l} \text{Loss} \\ \text{(CO} \rightarrow \text{Pr)} \end{array}$ | Average | $\begin{array}{l} \text{ORL} \\ \text{(Pr} \rightarrow \text{CO)} \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{l} \text{ORL} \\ \text{(CO} \rightarrow \text{Pr)} \end{array}$ |
|-------|--------|----------------------------|---|---------|--|--|
| 001   | 1310   |                            |   |         |  |  |
|       | 1490   |                            |   |         |  |  |
|       | 1550   |                            |   |         |  |  |
| 002   | 1310   |                            |   |         |  |  |
|       | 1490   |                            |   |         |  |  |
|       | 1550   |                            |   |         |  |  |

Results table for IL and ORL (Pr = premises, CO = central office):

The following table illustrates the expected ORL values for the network:

| Length (metres) | 1310nm (dB) | 1490nm (dB) | 1550nm (dB) |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 50              | 53          | 56          | 57          |
| 300             | 46          | 50          | 50          |
| 500             | 44          | 47          | 48          |
| 1000            | 41          | 45          | 46          |

These values only take into account two connections. FTTH networks often comprise of multiple connection points and, as reflectance values are very sensitive to dust and scratches, these values can easily be influenced by bad connections. For example, a single connector may generate an ORL of 40dB, which would exceed the expected value for the entire network. For point-to-multipoint network, the ORL contribution of each fibre is attenuated by 30 to 32 dB due to the splitter's bidirectional loss.

| Advantage of Method 1: OLTS  | Disadvantages of Method 1: OLTS   |
|--|---|
| Accurate IL and ORL measurement  | Two technicians required (however with a point-to-multipoint network, a single OLTS close to the OLT can be used for all subscribers within the same network) |
| Bidirectional IL and ORL values  | Communication required between technicians (when switching fibres)  |
| Possibility to test every distribution fibre   | A point-to-multipoint network requires one<br>technician to move from drop<br>terminal to drop terminal   |
| Macrobend identification during testing is<br>performed at 1550 and 1310 nm or<br>another combination of wavelengths<br>including the 1625 nm wavelength | In the event of a cut fibre or macrobend, or high<br>loss along the link. An<br>OTDR is required to locate the fault  |
| Transposed fibre identification on point-to point networks   | Impossible to detect transposed fibre on point-to-multipoint network  |
| Easy result analysis (only numbers)  | For accurate measurement, referencing is required frequently  |
| Fast testing   |   |



For optimum network qualification, some operators are using tools which can manage both OLTS (method 1) and OTDR (method 2).

## 11.2.2 Method 2: Use of an OTDR



Figure 165: Measurement with an OTDR

This method uses an optical time-domain reflectometer (OTDR). Unlike an OLTS, the OTDR can identify and locate the position of each component in the network. The OTDR will reveal splice loss, connector loss and reflectance, as well as the total end to end loss and ORL.

All fibres between the OLT and before the first splitter (transport side) may be tested to characterize the loss of each splice and locate macrobends. The test can be conducted to cover both directions. Post-processing of the results will be required to calculate the real loss of each splice (averaged between each direction).

The engineer can measure the loss of the splitter and the cumulative link loss, as well as identifying whether any unexpected physical event has occurred before, or after, the splitter. Construction testing can significantly reduce the number of problems that occur after subscriber activation by certifying end-to-end link integrity.

If tests can be performed in two steps, i.e. test of the feeder portion (F1) and then test of the distribution portion (F2), then OTDR tests are quite simple.

If tests can only be performed from one end (most likely because the splitters are spliced), then the recommended process is to use an OTDR test from the distribution/ ONT location. Optimized settings have to be made on the OTDR side, this to provide as much information as possible along the link. Depending on the split ratio, accurate detection and measurement of events will require the use and analysis of multiple pulses..





Figure 166: OTDR traces

| Advantages of Method 2: OTDR  | Disadvantages of Method 2: OTDR  |
|---|--|
| Measures both IL and ORL values.  | When testing after the splitter on the ONT side, the ORL is not measured in the right direction (opposite from the video signal).  |
| Possibility to test every distribution fibre.   | The technician needs to move from drop terminal to drop terminal.  |
| Macrobend identification during testing is<br>performed at 1550 and 1310nm or<br>another combination of wavelengths<br>involving the 1625nm wavelength. | Several tests may be required to test the entire link.   |
| In case of a cut fibre or macrobend, or<br>high loss/reflectance/ORL, the fault can<br>be located.  | A skilled technician is required to perform<br>and interpret the trace. However, OTDRs<br>can provide dedicated PON settings and a<br>linear view of the network elements. |
| Only one technician required.   | Longer testing time (even longer when networks requires multiple pulses for a complete analysis)   |









# **11.3 Service activation**

The service activation phase may seem very straightforward initially, however this task should not be underestimated as this is the moment at which the subscriber experience begins. The service activation scheme can be different depending on topology of the fibre network. The trend is for pre-engineered plug-and-play components with multiple connection points, rather than an all-spliced approach, particularly for deployments in MDUs.

In terms of handling data relating to test and measurements in PON, the service activation brings two new dimensions:

- results should be linked to subscribers or ONUs instead of fibres.
- more than one test location may be required, typically two or three.





Figure 168: Activation testing using a PON power meter

Since the service-activation phase is often performed by subcontractors, reporting and data authenticity protection are important, especially in PON deployments where hundreds of results may be generated for a single PON activation. Following the right steps in daily activity ensures a smooth workflow and high productivity.

## 11.3.1 Multiple testing locations

Verifying optical levels at various locations along the same fibre path assists the test engineers in pinpointing problems and/or defective components before activating a subscriber's service. Since FTTH network problems are often caused by dirty or damaged connectors, component inspection greatly reduces the need for troubleshooting, as power levels are verified for each network section. It is also strongly recommended that inspection of each connection point be conducted using a fibre inspection probe before each power measurement.



Figure 169: Testing point in PON



#### 11.3.1.1 Testing points

- By performing a power-level certification at the splitter, or more specifically at the output, enables users to verify if the splitter branch is working properly. This simple assessment makes it possible to confirm whether all network components from the CO (including the feeder fibre) to the splitter output are in good condition. Typically, the FDH includes SC/APC or LC/APC connectors but may also include fusion splices.
- 2. By conducting a power-level certification at the drop terminal, engineers can characterize the distribution fibre and the drop terminal ports. Usually, a splice tray is included within the drop terminal, which can cause macrobend problems.
- 3. The fibre connecting the drop terminals and the subscriber's premises is generally installed during service activation. To ensure reliable services to the subscriber, the network and the subscriber ONU must meet their specifications. The best method of guaranteeing this is to perform a pass-through connection to fully characterize all operating wavelengths (upstream and downstream) in the PON. This can only be achieved at the service-activation phase using a dual-port PON power meter adapted to the PON technology deployed and with a pass-through connection; a normal power meter can only certify downstream signals from the CO in single layer PON.



Figure 170: Pass-through testing of all wavelengths (Typical PON up to 1 Gigabit)

## **11.3.2** Testing next generation PON

Next generation PON networks (such as XGS-PON, NG-PON2, (refer Chapter 4)) will in most cases use the existing outside plant infrastructure already in use for current PON subscribers and be deployed as an additional layer. Operators may deploy across their network various mixes of PON layers, such as GPON + RF overlay+ XGS-PON or GPON + NG-PON2.




This brings another dimension of complexity to PON testing. Additional XGS PON wavelengths or set of NG-PON2 wavelengths will reach the end-user at the service activation location. With an instrument capable of identifying actual mix of PON layers and measuring corresponding discrete power from each layer is essential if false positives are to be avoided. An acceptable next generation compliant PON power meter should feature additional composite detectors dedicated to their specific upstream and downstream wavelength region.



## 11.3.3 Service activation reporting

From the office, engineers will have to generate reports to keep track of test results from the service activation phase. These results can later be used to pinpoint problems such as power degradation. Operators dealing with subcontractors may also use this information to keep track of activated subscribers.

A service activation report will typically include:

- subscriber name and/or phone number
- power level for each wavelength and each location
- time stamp for each measurement
- pass/warning/fail status compliant to standards such BPON, GPON or EPON
- thresholds used to perform the pass/warning/fail assessment

|          | OLT ID: 02 Center <> ONT ID: 22<br>[JOB ID: Roger] |                  |                  | PASS                             | rice activation report  |   |
|----------|--|------------------|------------------|----------------------------------|---|---|
| Location | Wavelength<br>(nm)                                 | Power<br>(dBm)   | Status           | Date/Time<br>(MM/DD/YY HH:MM:SS) | Hon<br>11 a d2 35 W<br>7: 41 4 22 - 46 P<br>7: 537 O<br>7: 597 O<br>7: 598 32 C<br>7: 548 32 C  |   |
|          | 1310   | 0.9              | PASS             |                                  | measurements  |   |
| DROP     | DROP   | 1490             | -7.1             | PASS                             | 10/01/09 13:45:28   | OLT ID: 02 Center   |
|          | 1550   | 3.1              | PASS             | 1                                | Wavelength<br>(nm)      Power<br>(dBm)      Status<br>Status      Data Time<br>(MM DD YY HH: M<br>D455        1310      0.9      DASS<br>1490      10101013.453 |   |
|          | 1310   | 1.2              | PASS             |                                  | 1490  |   |
| ONT      | 1490   | -7.4             | PASS             | 10/01/09 13:54:32                | 1490 - 7.4 PASS 10/01/09 13:54<br>1850 - 3.4 PASS   |   |
|          |  | 1550             | 3.4              | PASS                             | 7   | ONT installed on the driveway side of the home clase to side entry. |
| Comment: | ONT installed on t                                 | he driveway side | of the home clos | se to side entry.                | APPLIED THRESHOLDS  |   |
|          |  |                  |                  | Locati                           | (nm) (dBm) (dBm) (dBm)<br>1310 2.0 4.5 -5.5   |   |
|          |  |                  |                  | DRO                              | 1490 4.0 -22.6 -20.5<br>1550 12.8 -4.7 -7.7<br>1310 2.5 -4.0 -5.0   |   |

Figure 171: Service activation report

Once the service activation report has been received from the installer, the operator can activate and validate the services



## 12 FTTH Network Monitoring and Troubleshooting

## **12.1 FTTH Network monitoring**

For the FTTH network monitoring, the ONT Management and Control interface (OMCI), as specified by ITU-T Recommendation G984-4, defines the performance and fault management of the OLT, ONT and the physical layer. However, the OMCI requires communication between the OLT and the ONT. When the ONT does not respond, it is impossible to determine if the problem comes from the ONT or the physical layer, which is why many operators use an external physical monitoring system that can test the physical layer when the ONT is unreachable.

An OTDR test from the OLT is often capable of pinpointing the location of faults in the FTTH network and determining the workmanship involved in the installation. In the monitoring process, the goal is not to qualify the FTTH network (i.e. the measurement of all the elements of the network, mostly conducted during the installation phase), but to locate fibre degradations and faults.

## 12.1.1 Distinguishing between the different segments of a PON using an OTDR

Monitoring and distinguishing the different segments of an FTTH network can be challenging when testing with an OTDR. Figure 172 shows the OTDR trace for a simple 1x2 splitter when only one segment is connected. The different lengths enable identification of the two segments.



L1 Length of Segment 1

Figure 172: OTDR trace with a 1x2 splitter with only one connected segment



If the second segment is connected, the contributions of both segments appear on the trace, as Figure 173 shows.



Figure 173: OTDR trace with a 1x2 splitter with the 2 segments of different lengths

If each segment is the exact same length, the OTDR trace would appear similar to that shown in Figure 174.



Figure 174: OTDR trace with a 1x2 splitter with 2 segments of equal lengths



Several network topology parameters complicate testing with an OTDR and this should be considered when designing the FTTH network:

- The distances between the last splitter and the different ONTs can usually be equal as subscriber residences are typically located at about equal distances from the splitter;
- Splitting ratios are not typically 1x2 but rather 1x16, 1x32, or 1x64, increasing the splitter loss. For example, the typical loss of a 1x64 splitter is 18-20 dB.

Figure 175 shows an OTDR measurement from a 1x32 PON having multiple segments after the splitter.





The ideal PON OTDR would have a very high dynamic range, making it possible to detect optical events on the fibre branches beyond the splitter, as well as very short dead zones to differentiate between terminations (ONTs), which are usually not reflective. The multi-pulse OTDRs available today are addressing this to some extent, but not fully. Resulting from the tradeoff mentioned previously, OTDRs do not have high dynamic ranges as well as very short dead zones, making it necessary to add a reflective optical element at each ONT. When the reflective optical element is present, the OTDR can distinguish this element from noise using a very short pulse width, as shown in Figure 176.





Figure 176: OTDR trace on PON equipped with reflective filters

The PON monitoring can be performed while the PON network is in service as the OTDR uses a wavelength that differs from the one used by traffic. The latest ITU-T G984.4 recommendation allocates the bandwidth for the test at being between 1625 and 1670 nm. The monitoring system inserts the test wavelength by adding a wavelength division multiplexer (WDM) close to the OLT. ITU-T recommendation G984.5 states that the ONT must not be sensitive to test wavelengths.

## 12.1.2 FTTH Network Monitoring System Approach

For a monitoring system, a switch is usually added, which is capable of testing multiple OLTs/PONs with the same OTDR, as shown in Figure 177. This approach enables a single OTDR to handle the testing of an entire site.





Figure 177: PON Test System integrating a switch

Figure 178 shows how to use the system for provisioning: Technicians log into the application from their mobile phones or any other tool. After registering the subscriber ID, they can enter the optical power measured at subscriber connector and then trigger an OTDR measurement. The monitoring system automatically recognizes the new peak of this subscriber and records its position and level.



Figure 178: PON Test System used for Provisioning



Figure 179 shows how to use the PON test system for troubleshooting. An operator receives an alarm from the ONT or a call from a subscriber. The operator can immediately check if the fibre is in working order by using the PON test system. The operator initiates an OTDR measurement on the suspected PON and the result is compared with the records to determine changes in the subscriber's fibre attenuation. Typically, the disappearance of a peak indicates that there is a fibre cut along the FTTH network, whilst a lower level of a peak indicates a bend or a degradation along the fibre network. The location of the fault can be found by comparing the results obtained after the alarms to the reference results obtained during system provisioning.



Figure 179: PON Test System used for troubleshooting

## **12.2 FTTH network troubleshooting**

## 12.2.1 Fibre Network troubleshooting

Troubleshooting on an out-of-service FTTH network (i.e. on a point-to-point network or when the entire PON network is down) can be conducted simply with the use of a power meter or OTDR.

However, most of the time, not all subscribers (ONTs) are affected, therefore it may be necessary to perform in-service tests. In order to troubleshoot a live PON network with portable instruments, requires a PON power meter using through-mode to investigate which signals going downstream and upstream are out of tolerance. In order to pinpoint any fibre breaks, macro-bending, faulty splices or connectors, an OTDR with a live testing port (also called filtered port) must be used from the subscriber's location.





Figure 180: PON network troubleshooting

Ensure the fibre length corresponds to the length in between the drop cable output and the splitter location. If not, this indicates a problem (break or macro-bend) is present at this location.

If the length measurement is correct, every splice point should be checked to see it does not exceed the normal splice values. Any point exhibiting an excessive loss value will indicate the presence of a macro-bend, kink in the fibre or a bad splice.

## 12.2.2 In-home wiring troubleshooting

The fibre is terminated at the home by an ONU that provides interfaces to serve analogue and digital video over coaxial cable; video, VoIP, or data over Ethernet; as well as phone services over twisted pair wiring. Service providers may wish to provide digital video through quadrature amplitude modulation (QAM) or IPTV or a combination).

Premise architecture incorporating both QAM for broadcast video and IPTV for on-demand, with the IPTV video sharing the coaxial cable with the QAM digital video, is typically delivered using the Multimedia over Coax Alliance (MoCA) standard. The HPNAv3 protocol can also be used to deliver IPTV and data since it can run on existing twisted pair telephone lines or coaxial cable.

In addition to loss, latency, and jitter emanating from the fibre network, a number of in-home issues can combine to degrade the subscriber's quality of experience, including problems with phone lines, Ethernet wiring mis-configuration or faulty termination, poor coaxial cabling integrity, and noise impairments.

### 12.2.2.1 Phone line issues

Phone lines (twisted pair) in the premises often carry both voice service and data services using HomePNA (HPNA) standards. The ONU emulates the POTS network by providing all of the battery voltages, ring tones, and dial tones that were previously delivered by the central office. Consequently, troubleshooting VoIP covering phone wiring is very similar to troubleshooting POTS.

Common errors affecting in-home wiring installations include:

- opens
- shorts
- crossed wires
- broken wires



## 12.2.2.2 Identifying Ethernet wiring issues

Many homes are now pre-wired with twisted-pair wiring suitable for Ethernet data services. Verification of proper termination is very important. Between 75% and 85% of the time in-home technicians dedicate to troubleshooting can be attributed to improper terminations. The most common termination faults can be located using a wiring verifier.

Continuity tests include:

- verification of pin-to-pin connections
- wire capability to carry a signal
- shields
- voltage on line

This is a basic connectivity test, not a stress test.

### 12.2.2.3 Locating and resolving coax problems

Existing coaxial home networks present a variety of challenges. Constructed by the home builder, the owner, or perhaps a previous service provider, the quality and routing of the network is rarely known. A high-quality coaxial installation should provide at least 30dB of noise isolation to the outside world (noise immunity).

However, these networks often contain:

- splitters
- pinches
- breaks
- bad cables
- un-terminated ends
- bad connections
- amplifiers

Any of these may lead to network problems and quality of service issues. Proper grooming to repair or replace portions of the network to meet the triple-play service provider standards is critical in providing reliable services.



## 12.3 Summary of optical testing tools

| Test Equipment  | Function   | Use  |
|---|--|--|
| Inspection scope  | Visual inspection of<br>connectors, this with<br>automated Pass/Fail analysis<br>according to IEC standard | Fibre connector assembly check and troubleshooting   |
| VFL (visual fault<br>locator                                      | Continuity check up to 5km,<br>break/bend visual identifier for<br>fibre along patch panel/hub<br>areas    | Fibre link construction and<br>troubleshooting at locations<br>where fibres are accessible   |
| Optical talk set  | Enables communication<br>between engineers using cable<br>link   | When two engineers are required for end to end test  |
| Light source/<br>power meter or<br>bidirectional loss<br>test set | Measures fibre link insertion<br>loss, return loss and tests<br>continuity                                 | Fibre link construction, acceptance testing and troubleshooting  |
| Power meter only  | Measures power output of equipment   | Equipment and fibre link turn up and troubleshooting   |
| Power meter<br>with clip-on<br>device                             | Estimates optical power in link  | Equipment and fibre trouble-<br>shooting at any location where<br>fibres are accessible, even<br>when connectors cannot be<br>accessed |
| Clip-on fibre<br>identifier                                       | Identify and track traffic on<br>fibre, may also estimate power<br>output along link                       | Equipment and fibre trouble-<br>shooting at any location where<br>fibres are accessible, even<br>when connectors cannot be<br>accessed |

The following is a list of optical testing tools used for FTTH networks:

| 1310/1490/1550<br>selective power<br>meter with through<br>mode | Measures power levels of<br>equipment and fibre link when<br>OLT/ONT connected | Fibre link and equipment<br>(ONT/OLT) turn-up and<br>troubleshooting                    |
|---|--|---|
| ORL meter   | Measures overall optical return loss   | Fibre link construction and troubleshooting   |
| OTDR  | Measures fibre link<br>characteristics   | Fibre link construction, acceptance, troubleshooting                                    |
| Optical Monitoring<br>System                                    | Monitor fibre networks   | Monitoring of fibre networks to<br>locate fibre breaks or<br>fibre/element degradations |



## **12.4 Optical Intrusion Detection Monitoring**

Monitoring fibre access chambers and outdoor distribution systems in the field are becoming ever more important as the infrastructure becoming takes on a critical role if sustained operation of an economy is to be achieved. Operators are well aware of the adverse effects of targeted vandalism that occurs to predominately outdoor distribution cabinets and occasionally on access chambers. Optical intrusion detection methods offer an additional layer of security with peace of mind for those responsible for safeguarding their overall network performance.

As described in previous Chapters, remote optical fibre intrusion detection systems will easily detect network fibre damage with exact fault location and will furthermore enable security breach detection of critical infrastructure. In most cases OSP fibre infrastructures, such as access chambers and outdoor cabinets, have no dedicated AC/DC power supply for electrical contacts monitoring and alternative battery operated solutions present a real maintenance challenge. In such cases an all-optical intrusion detection sensor coupled with an OTDR-based monitoring system can be of some assistance. Optical intrusion detection has the following unique advantages:

- Optical monitoring systems are not easily manipulated by an outside intruder without the manipulation attempt itself being detected.
- Magnetic, EMP or sudden power disruptions at the monitored site cannot affect an optical system.
- Maintenance free solution No batteries required
- Warning notices of unintended access to monitored objects is immediately available.
- Optical monitoring does not evaluate packet data on the fibre link: it directly monitors reflected light of selected wavelengths.
- Detection of any new devices added to the fibre link.
- Detection of remote tampering, whether intentional or unintentional.
- No payload signal jamming possible as fibre data traffic is left untouched
- Operates on fully functional PON networks by utilising WDM filters.
- Sensors operate on a splitter based PON network
- Sensors can be cascaded on a single fibre link (to monitor multiple points by the use of asymmetrical splitters)
- Theoretical optical span is governed by optical budget and OTDR dynamics.

Typically, when an operator who wants to monitor his OSP fibre assets he will choose to run the optical sensors on a dedicated fibre to separate security from actual services. This method helps to separate the responsibilities in maintenance cases. But an optical intrusion detection system is not limited to dark fibre monitoring as it can also be used to monitor in-service active fibre systems using standardised ITU-T defined passive WDM filters.

## 12.4.1 Basic system function

Either a wavelength selective reflector or wideband reflector is used to monitor the state of the fibre link. The optical reflection (attenuation / time) is evaluated by an OTDR and the calculated insertion loss is typically measured at 1650nm (OTDR reserved wavelength) or measured in a wideband if no other wavelengths are present. The reflection results are constantly compared against stored initial reference values of the system from first commission.



The actual measured OTDR event is typically a loss or strong attenuation of the reflected light. Optical intrusion detection sensors are based on manipulating the attenuation/return loss of light from the reflector device. In principle this can be achieved either by deforming/stressing the fibre (macrobending) until no light can travel back to the OTDR due to internal losses or by removing the reflector altogether from the fibre itself, in this case light will just be lost at the open end.

Any unauthorized manipulation on the fibre infrastructure (such as an intrusion to an access chamber) is thus detected and if necessary alarmed (within set and stored tolerances). External alarms can be trigged by stand-alone systems or integrated (customised) to an existing NMS and GIS (for visualisation).

The network operator is able to evaluate the operational capability or quality of his infrastructure himself and does not depend on the judgement or evaluation given by third parties (e. g. fitting and installation companies or the lessee of the infrastructure or the subscriber).



Figure 181: Basic Operating Principle of the Optical Intrusion Detection system



## 13 FTTH Standardization and Terminology Overview

## 13.1 Introduction

The background of this chapter of the FTTH Handbook is to provide an overview of the standardization efforts in FTTH by relevant standardization bodies.

There are a vast number of terms and abbreviations concerning FTTH in use with several organizations creating their own. The result is that they are no longer able to understand each other. Therefore an overall list of terms and abbreviations has been compiled and will be published in IEC's Electropedia<sup>1</sup> with the aim of providing all parties with the same technical language and standards.

New applications drive bandwidth demand and eventually fibre will be brought not only to the home, but actually inside it. There are still a wide variety of technical solutions under discussion however more innovative ideas are needed. In addition there exists a large number of brownfield installations, which have widely varying technical requirements.

FTTX is still a relatively young industry and some parties active in this market may not fully comprehend the ramifications in over specification or even the risks involved in operating without proper specifications. There are also some builders of small networks who may have insufficient understanding of the need for standardization and suitability.

A standards guidance will help define systems architectures, basic functionalities and product requirements thus ensuring the appropriate selection of solutions, products and suitable network quality. A clear definition of the minimum quality standard of the access network will facilitate deployment and the operation of reliable networks, especially as economic and every-day is highly dependent on an uninterrupted supply of telecom networks. Minimum quality levels should be guaranteed by incorporating standardizing test methods with functional product specifications that include minimum values for all the relevant product parameters.

Through standardization the industry will ensure a competitive market for components and subsystems for the infrastructure as well as providing services that are compatible with these standardised infrastructures that support existing interfaces.

Standardization should reflect the consensus of the market and the voice of the users. Approved standards should be flexible enough to allow developers the opportunity to implement their products and incorporate innovative solutions to the overall system.

During network deployment minimum best practice standards should be followed. This is especially



<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) is a worldwide organization for standardization whose members come from national electrotechnical committees (IEC National Committees). The objective of the IEC is to promote international co-operation on all issues relating to standardization in the electrical and electronic fields. To this end the IEC publishes an International Standards document as well as other publications including The Electropedia. The aim of these publications is to promote the organizations' objectives. Electropedia (also known as the "IEV Online") is the world's most comprehensive online electrical and electronic terminology database containing more than 20 000 terms and definitions.

relevant when installing cables for example and also in matters relating to health and safety, such as laser safety particularly when optical fibre solutions enter the home.

The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) is a worldwide organization for standardization whose members come from national electro technical committees (IEC National Committees). The objective of the IEC is to promote international co-operation on all issues relating to standardization in the electrical and electronic fields. To this end the IEC publishes an International Standards document as well as other publications including The Electropedia. The aim of these publications is to promote the organizations' objectives. Electropedia (also known as the "IEV Online") is the world's most comprehensive online electrical and electronic terminology database containing more than 20 000 terms and definitions.

Standards should specify the minimum functions and performance of subsystems and the basic interfaces (hardware and software) between the various parts of the infrastructure, such as the mating interface between cabling outside and inside buildings.

Since the complete network infrastructure is being considered, the way in which standards are imposed will depend on the particular minimum requirements related to the specific area within the infrastructure and can be subdivided into a number of areas:

- 1. The central office;
- 2. The outside plant (OSP): standards should relate to both environmental and optical performance as well as lifetime requirements, without impacting on actual design;
- 3. Shared building space in an MDU deployment and basement equipment: standards should relate to both environmental and optical performance as well as lifetime requirements, without impacting on actual design;
- 4. In the home and public space: this is a new area which may require more activity as the public could be affected by deployment and connectivity, essentially creating new demands (and therefore new standards) on the products to be used.

## 13.2 Major standardization activities and guidelines

Several standardization activities are in progress on international and national levels. Working groups in the ITU, IEC, ISO/IEC JTC1, CENELEC and IEEE, as well as organizations such as the FTTH Council are providing guidance for the design and implementation of fibre optic access networks. In addition, standardization activities are also taking place on the national level. The following is an overview of the key activities.

## 13.2.1 IEC TC 86, SC 86A, SC 86B, SC 86C

### 13.2.1.1 Scope of TC 86

Technical Committee 86 ("Fibre Optics") and its Subcommittees SC86A ("Fibres and cables"), SC86B ("Fibre optic interconnecting devices and passive components") and SC86C ("Fibre optic systems and active devices") prepare standards, specifications and technical reports for fibre optic based systems, subsystems, modules, devices and components. These are primarily intended, but not exclusively, for use with communications equipment. This activity covers terminology, characteristics, related tests, calibration and measurement methods, functional interfaces, and optical environmental and mechanical requirements with the aim of ensuring reliable system performance.



## 13.2.1.2 Strategic business plan of TC 86

The work of TC 86 and its Subcommittees has made, and continues to make, a profound impact on the broad communications market. External factors influence fibre optic devices which affect the markets. However, the market has experienced slow but steady growth and there has been diversification of fibre optics applications since the early 2000's. This has resulted in continued global participation by users and suppliers, as well as a shift from a few large organizations to many smaller companies becoming active in this industry. One of the underlying reasons for this is a market consolidation in developed countries along with the introduction of new and important players in developing countries.

## 13.2.2 ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 25

Subscriber premises cabling: ISO/IEC 15018, Information technology – Generic cabling for homes.

## 13.2.3 ITU

## 13.2.3.1 ITU-T Handbook on Optical fibres, cables and systems (2009)

This handbook was published in 2009 and is available from <<u>www.itu.int/publ/T -HDB-OUT.10-</u> <u>2009-1/en</u> >. It contains a chapter on the deployment and operation of fibre access networks.

## 13.2.3.2 ITU-T Study Group 15

The ITU-T Study Group 15 is concerned with optical transport networks and access network infrastructures (further information available from <u>ITU-T Study Group 15</u>).

A draft revision of the Guide on the use of ITU-T L-series Recommendations related to Optical Infrastructures has been produced by ITU-T Study Group 15. Two new L. series Recommendations related to FTTX have been approved and published:

- L.89: Design of suspension wires, telecommunication poles and guys for optical access
  networks
- L. 90: Optical access network topologies for broadband services

Active systems for PON environments are addressed by Question 2 of Study Group 15 and the latest developments are:

- G.989.1/2/3 NG-PON2
  - Suite of standards to support residential, business, mobile backhaul and other applications
  - PON: Supports up to 80Gb/s in Downstream and 80Gb/s in Upstream
  - Point-to-Point WDM overlay
  - G.9807.1: XGS-PON: New standard to enhance XG-PON (10G/2.5G)
    - Capability to support 10Gb/s in Downstream and 10Gb/s in Upstream over single pair of Wavelengths. It also supports simultaneous operation with XG-PON ONTs, i.e. 10G/10G and 10/2.5 operation is supported over same PON interface.
    - Possibility to evolve towards 25G/25G over single pair of Wavelengths
    - Expected date of conclusion: Plenary consent 2016
    - G.9807.2 Reach extension for XGS-PON
    - Defines Reach extenders for XGS-PON



## **13.2.4 CENELEC**

## 13.2.4.1 CENELEC Technical Report CLC/TR 50510

Fibre optic access to end-user is a guide to building FTTX fibre optic networks and is available from <<u>CENELEC CLC/TR 50510:2012</u>>.

This technical report was prepared by the CENELEC TC 86 A, Optical Fibres and Optical Fibre Cables and provides information about the passive infrastructure layers of a fibre access network as well as a glossary of terms.

The three CENELEC technical committees listed below, are involved in work relating to fibres, cables and cable accessories (such as mechanical splices, connectors and enclosures).

### 13.2.4.2 Activities in CENELEC Technical Committee CLC/TC 86A

- Bend insensitive fibres in cords
- The next generation of flex tube riser cables
- Fire resistant cables for in-house applications test procedures.

## 13.2.4.3 Activities in CENELEC Technical Committee CLC/TC 86BXA

Work on new activities specific to optical distribution networks (including indoor products). In regard to specific FTTH distribution networks, a taskforce team is looking at the possibility of reducing the stringent testing standards of optical performances to a more acceptable and realistic level in order to further improve the cost and speed of installing enclosures.

A pertinent Performance Specification has been released by TC86BXA W G1, entitled *Type FPFT* (factory-polished field-terminated) simplex connector terminated on IEC 60793-2-50 category B1.3 and B6\_A2 single mode fibre, Category C.

### 13.2.4.4 Activities in CENELEC Technical Committee CLC/TC 215

• Subscriber premise cabling.

### 13.2.5 IEEE P802.3

IEEE is planning to present a specification for application for fibre usage. An on-going dialogue is in progress between IEEE and JTC1/SC25.

This IEEE activity will be strictly limited to fibre cables only.

Work, directly related to the above and concerning EPON, is being carried out and described in IEEE Standard.

P802.3 (2008) and P802.3av. At present no further FTTH activities are taking place in P802, however work on the recently started IEEE P1904.1's SIEPON project is in progress.

A new Study Group has been established to address NG-EPON related issues (802.3 NG-EPON). The first meeting occurred in September 2015 and the tentative date for the conclusion of the standard is April 2020.



The objectives for NG-EPON are:

- Being developed in P802.3ca 100G-EPON Task Force
- 25 Gb/s in downstream and 25 Gb/s in upstream over a single pair of wavelengths
- 50 Gb/s in downstream and 50 Gb/s in upstream over a single pair of wavelengths
- 100 Gb/s in downstream and 100 Gb/s in upstream over four pair of wavelengths

The work will be developed considering fixed wavelengths for each of the optical carriers used, and up 100 Gb/s can be used via bonding technics.

More details at: http://www.ieee802.org/3/ad\_hoc/ngepon/ng\_epon\_report.pdf

## **13.2.6** Broadband Forum

BBF has created the Fibre Access Network Working Group. The following documents are relevant to FTTH:

- TR-156 Using GPON Access in the context of TR -101t
- TR-167 GPON-fed TR -101 Ethernet Access Node
- TR-178 Multi-service Broadband Network Architecture and Nodal Requirements
- TR-200 Using EPON in the context of TR-101
- BBF.247 G-PON ONU Certification Program
- TR-255 GPON interoperability test plan

The working texts are available from < <u>www.broadband-forum.org</u> >.

## 13.2.7 ETSI

The Access, Terminals, Transmission and Multiplexing (ATTM) Technical Committee (TC ATTM) consists of three Working Groups (W G).

| IEC | Fibre optic - Terminology  | IEC 61931           | Int |
|-----|--|---------------------|-----|
| IEC | Guidance for combining different single-mode fibre types   | IEC 62000<br>TR     | Int |
| IEC | Reliability of fibre optic interconnecting devices and passive optical components                            | IEC 62005           | Int |
| IEC | Semiconductor optoelectronic devices for fibre optic system applications                                     | IEC 62007           | Int |
| IEC | Fibre optic interconnecting devices and passive components –<br>Fibre optic WDM devices                      | IEC 62074           | Int |
| IEC | Fibre optic interconnecting devices and passive components – Fibre optic closures                            | IEC 62134           | Int |
| IEC | Fibre optic active components and devices – Package and interface standards                                  | IEC 62148           | Int |
| IEC | Fibre optic active components and devices – Performance standards  | IEC 62149           | Int |
| IEC | Fibre optic active components and devices – Test and measurement procedures                                  | IEC 62150           | Int |
| IEC | Fibre optic interconnecting devices and passive components – Part 01: Fibre optic connector cleaning methods | IEC 62627-<br>01 TR | Int |



| ISO/IEC | Information technology – Generic cabling systems  | ISO/IEC<br>11801       | Int |
|---------|---|------------------------|-----|
| ISO/IEC | Information technology - Implementation and operation of subscriber premises cabling                                  | ISO/IEC<br>14763       | Int |
| ITU-T   | Characteristics and test methods of optical fibres and cables   | G.65x series           | Int |
| ITU-T   | Transmission characteristics of optical components and subsystems   | G.671                  | Int |
| ITU-T   | Construction, installation and protection of cables and other elements of outside plant                               | L. xy series           | Int |
| ANSI    | Commercial building telecommunications pathways and spaces  | ANSI/TIA/E<br>IA 569-B | Reg |
| ANSI    | Residential telecommunications infrastructure standard  | ANSI/TIA/EI<br>A 570   | Reg |
| ANSI    | Administration standard for commercial telecommunications infrastructure  | ANSI/TIA/E<br>IA 606-A | Reg |
| ANSI    | Commercial building grounding and bonding requirements for telecommunications   | ANSI/TIA/EI<br>A 607   | Reg |
| ANSI    | Subscriber-owned outside plant telecommunications infrastructure standard   | ANSI/TIA/EI<br>A 758_A | Reg |
| ANSI    | Subscriber-owned outside plant telecommunications infrastructure standard   | ANSI/TIA/E<br>IA 758-A | Reg |
| ANSI    | Building automation systems cabling standard for commercial buildings   | ANSI/TIA/EI<br>A 862   | Reg |
| CENELEC | Family specification – Optical fibre cables for indoor applications   | EN 187103              | Reg |
| CENELEC | Single mode optical cable (duct/direct buried installation)   | EN 187105              | Reg |
| CENELEC | Sectional specifications: Optical cables to be used along electrical power lines (OCEPL)                              | EN 187200              | Reg |
| CENELEC | Generic specifications: Optical fibres  | EN 188000              | Reg |
| CENELEC | Information technology – Generic cabling systems  | EN 50173               | Reg |
| CENELEC | Information technology – Cabling Installation   | EN 50174               | Reg |
| CENELEC | Application of equipotential bonding and earthing in buildings with information technology equipment                  | EN 50310               | Reg |
| CENELEC | Information technology – Cabling installation – Testing of<br>installed cabling                                       | EN 50346               | Reg |
| CENELEC | Connector sets and interconnect components to be used in optical fibre communication systems - Product specifications | EN 50377               | Reg |
| CENELEC | Fibre organisers and closures to be used in optical fibre communication systems – Product specifications              | EN 50411               | Reg |
| CENELEC | Simplex and duplex cables to be used for cords  | EN 50551               | Reg |
| CENELEC | Optical fibres - Measurement methods and test procedures  | EN 60793-1             | Reg |
| CENELEC | Optical fibres - Product specifications   | EN 60793-2             | Reg |
| CENELEC | Optical fibre cables  | EN 60794               | Reg |
| CENELEC | Generic cabling systems – Specification for the testing of balanced communication cabling                             | EN 61935               | Reg |



## Appendix B: Deploying FTTH today... "10 most frequently asked questions"

## Demystifying the deployment (and adoption) of Fibre-To-The-Home

Today, telecommunication market players such as traditional operators, municipalities, utility companies or organisations leading individual initiatives, all of them are seeking to offer high speed access to their end-users, be it in residential or enterprise environment.

This document intends to give more guidance on the main activities one encounters with the deployment of "Fibre-To-The-Home". Successful FTTH deployment and adoption encompasses a stepwise approach of thinking, analysing, implementing and enabling, starting from the initial business case (justifying the Return on Investment (financially or socially speaking)) and ending by the final adoption of the service by the end-user.

Issues and solutions are illustrated by means of 10 main questions with respective answers and cover FTTH deployment and clarification of some topics with practical examples. Let this document be a first introduction and sanity check on your ideas for FTTH.

Below are the 5 steps of FTTH deployment:

- 1. Prepare and keep detailed documentation of all decisions (go or no go?) Design the business case, specify the geographic market, concretise your business model, choose a network architecture and check regulatory obligations and requirements.
- 2. Deploy your outside plant (put your fibre in) Perform the dimensioning of your passive infrastructure, select your components, perform cost synergies, and implement your fibre termination
- 3. Implement your connectivity (light your fibre) Deploy your active technology, respond your time to market needs, perform interoperability and end to end testing, and implement your management solution
- 4. Enable your service directly to the end-user (retail?) Launch your service bundles, organise your subscriber support, manage your end-user's home environment
- 5. Enable service models with third parties (wholesale?) Expand beyond your traditional 3play services, negotiate quality of service agreements, and promote application stores

### Step 1: Prepare and keep detailed documentation of all decisions (go or no go?)

Ensure all parameters are specified, for making a sound judgement. Why, when, where and how do we go for it? Only the best plan will lead to the better outcome. Some questions:

entertainment services (e.g. immersive communication) is considered one of the key elements for creating an enhanced end-user experience.



Furthermore, policy makers consider FTTH a motor for socio-economic development as well as providing the opportunity to introduce services such as e-health, e-learning, e-government to citizens. Providing services relevant to personal lifestyle and bringing added value to society will further accelerate the mass market acceptance of FTTH.

Additional questions:

- Question: How to market the enhanced value offered by FTTH?
- Question: What service definitions and assurance procedures should be put in place?
- Question: What is the target audience?

## Step 5: Enable service models with third parties (wholesale?)

It is not a requirement to implement the entire "vertically integrated' model and enter the retail market alone. Partnerships, agreements, working cooperation, etc., can all be incorporated to bring about successful FTTH systems. Additional questions:

### Question: How to attract Application, Content and Service Providers?

To build a sustainable business model for FTTH, it is necessary to attract innovative third-party application, content and service providers. This requires dedicated service delivery platforms. Essentially, these platforms, based upon open APIs, hide the complexity of the underlying infrastructure and facilitate a more rapid and transparent service delivery.

Exposure of network capacity in a managed, quality-controlled manner is of special interest to trusted parties such as businesses, energy providers and (semi-) public organizations; these groups are willing to pay a premium for this service.

Following on from a guaranteed bandwidth and QoS, the service level agreement (SLA) may cover a wide range of managed common services, such as hosting facilities, app stores, application life cycle management etc. This approach may attract new market entrants, lacking the scale and expertise, but enriching the FTTH ecosystem with innovative applications, services and content.

### Question: How to expand beyond traditional triple play offerings?

Moving beyond the traditional commercial triple play offering requires partnerships between Network Service Providers (NSP), Consumer Electronic (CE) manufacturers and Application & Content Providers (ACP). For example, innovative business models are needed for over-the-top video delivery to coexist with managed IPTV services.

Additional questions:

- Question: How to build a business case for service providers?
- Question: How to manage multiple service providers (Quality of Service, Bandwidth, etc)?
- Question: What role does advertising have in these business models?

More information about deployment and operation of FTTH is available in the FTTH Handbook. The FTTH Business Guide provides information about FTTH financing and business cases.



# Glossary

| ADSS      | All-Dielectric Self-Supporting AN Access Node    |
|-----------|--|
| APC       | Angled Physical Contact                          |
| ATM       | Asynchronous Transfer Mode                       |
| APON      | Asynchronous Transfer Mode PON                   |
| BEP       | Building Entry Point                             |
| Bit       | Binary Digit                                     |
| Bit rate  | Binary Digit Rate                                |
| BPON      | Broadband Passive Optical Network                |
| Bps       | Bit Per Second                                   |
| CATV      | Cable Television                                 |
| CPE       | Customer Premises Equipment                      |
| CRM       | Customer Relation Management                     |
| СТВ       | Customer Termination Box                         |
| CO        | Central Office                                   |
| CWDM      | Coarse Wavelength Division Multiplexing          |
| DBA       | Dynamic Bandwidth Allocation                     |
| DN        | Distribution Node                                |
| DOCSICS   | ·····  |
| DP        | Distribution Point                               |
| DSL       | Digital Subscriber Line                          |
| DSLAM     | Digital Subscriber Line Access Multiplexer       |
| DWDM      | Dense Wavelength Division Multiplexing           |
| EFM       | Ethernet in the First Mile (IEEE 802.3ah)        |
| EMS       | Element Management System                        |
| EP2P      | Ethernet over P2P (IEEE 802.3ah)                 |
| EPON      | Ethernet Passive Optical Network                 |
| FCCN      | Fibre Cross Connect Node                         |
| FBT       | Fused Biconic Tapered                            |
| FCP       | Fibre Concentration Point                        |
| FDB       | Fibre Distribution Box                           |
| FDF       | Fibre Distribution Field                         |
| FDH       | Fibre Distribution Hub (another term for FCP)    |
| FITH      | Fibre In The Home                                |
| FTTB      | Fibre To The Building                            |
| FTTC      | Fibre To The Curb                                |
| FTTH      | Fibre To The Home                                |
| FTTN      | Fibre To The Node                                |
| FTTO      | Fibre To The Office                              |
| FTTP      | Fibre To The Premises                            |
| FTTx      | Generic term for all of the fibre-to-the-x above |
| FWA       | Fixed Wireless Access                            |
| Gbps      | Gigabits per second                              |
| GIS       | Geographic Information System                    |
| GPON      | Gigabit Passive Optical Network                  |
| HC        | Home Connected                                   |
| HDPE      |  |
|           | High-Density PolyEthylene                        |
| HFC       | High-Density PolyEthylene<br>Hybrid Fiber Coax   |
| HFC<br>HP |  |
|           | Hybrid Fiber Coax                                |
| HP        | Hybrid Fiber Coax<br>Homes Passed                |



| IL        | Insertion loss   |
|-----------|--|
| IMP       | Indoor Manipulation Point  |
| IEC       | International Electrotechnical Commission  |
| IP        | Ingress Protection (also intellectual property)  |
| ISO       | International Organization for Standardization   |
| ISP       | Internet Service Provider  |
| ITU-T     | International Telecommunication Unit – Telecommunications Standards LAN Local Area Network |
| LI        | Local interface  |
| LMDS      | Local Multipoint Distribution Service  |
| LSZH      | low smoke, zero halogen  |
| Mbps      | Megabits per second  |
| MDU       | Multi-Dwelling Units   |
| MEMS      | Micro Electro Mechanical Switch  |
|           |  |
| MMDS      | Multichannel Multipoint Distribution Service   |
| MMF       | MultiMode Fibre  |
| MN        | Main Node  |
| NGA       | Next Generation Access Network   |
| NGN       | Next Generation Network  |
| NMS       | Network Management System  |
| NTU       | Network Termination Unit   |
| ODF       | Optical Distribution Frame   |
| ODP       | Optical Distribution Point   |
| ODR       | Optical Distribution Rack  |
| OE        | Optical Ethernet   |
| OLA       | Operational Level Agreement  |
| OLT       | Optical Line Termination   |
| OLTS      | Optical Loss Test Set  |
| ОМР       | Optical Manipulation point   |
| ONT       | Optical Network Termination  |
| ONU       | Optical Network Unit   |
| OPGW      | Optical Power Ground Wire  |
| OTDR      | Optical Time-Domain Reflectometer  |
| ото       | Optical Telecommunication Outlet   |
| P2MP      | Point-To-Multi-Point   |
| P2P / PtP | Point-To-Point (communication, configuration or connection)                                |
| PC        | Physical Contact or Polished Connector   |
| PE        | PolyEthylene   |
| PON       | Passive Optical Network  |
| РОР       | Point Of Presence  |
| PVC       | PolyVinylChloride  |
| RU        | Rack Unit  |
| RL        | Return Loss  |
| ROW       | Right Of Way   |
| S/N       | Signal-to-Noise ratio  |
| SDSL      | Symmetric Digital Subscriber Line  |
| SFU       | Single Family Unit   |
| SLA       | Service Level Agreement  |
| SMF       | Single Mode Fibre  |
| STP       | Shielded Twisted Pair  |
| STU       | Single-Tenant Units  |
| UPC       | Ultra Physical Contact   |
| UPS       | Uninterruptible Power Supply   |
| UTP       | Unshielded Twisted Pair  |
| TDMA      | Time Division Multiplex Access   |
|           |  |



www.ftthcouncil.eu

## **FTTH Council Europe**

Rue de la Presse 4 B-1000 Brussels Belgium

+43 664 358 95 16

info@ftthcouncil.eu www.ftthcouncil.eu



CONNECTING EVERYONE AND EVERYTHING, EVERYWHERE